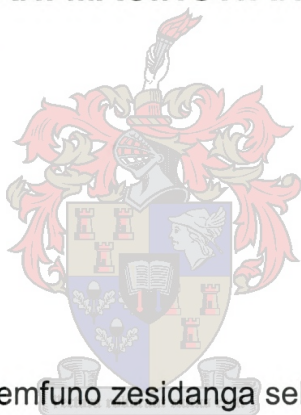


# **UHLALUTYO LWESEMANTI YELEKHISIKONI YEZENZI U-BAMBA NO- GCINA NO-LONDOLOZA KWISIXHOSA**

**NGU**

**VUYANI MACINGWANA**



Ithisisi efakwe njengenxalenye yeemfuno zesidanga seMaster of Arts kwiDyunivesithi yaseStellenbosch

Umqeqeshi ophambili Ngu Prof. MW Visser

**APRELI 2005**

## ISIQINISEKISO

Mna, osayine ngezantsi, ndiyaqinisekisa ukuba uphando olwenziwe kule thisisi lolwam buqu kwaye andizange ndilufake lonke okanye inxal'enye yalo ngaphambili nakuyiphi na iDyunivesti ngeenjongo zokufumana isidanga

---

Umsayino

21/1/05  
Umhla

## ABSTRACT

This study explores the lexical semantic analysis of **–bamba**, **-gcina** and **–londoloza**.

In chapter 1 the aim of the study is stated. Properties about the lexical semantic analysis of the verbs **–bamba**, **-gcina**, and **–londoloza** as well as the generative lexicon theory by Pustejovsky (1996) are discussed. The theoretical framework and the organisation of study are also discussed in this chapter.

Chapter 2 addresses in more detail the type system for semantics. A generative theory of the lexicon includes multiple levels of representation for different types of lexical information needed. Among such levels are Argument Structure, Event Structure, Qualia Structure and Leical Inheritance Structure. Chapter 2 also represents in more detail the structure of qualia and the role they play in distributing the functional behaviour of words and phrases in composition.

Chapter 3 examines the lexical semantic analysis of the verbs **–bamba**, **-gcina** and **–londoloza** to account for the range of selectional properties of the NP subject argument of these verbs, and the various interpretations that arise in terms of composition with their complement arguments. The polysemous behaviour of the verbs **–bamba**, **-gcina** and **–londoloza** are examined in sentence alternation constructions with respect to event structure properties. The lexical representation in terms of argument structure and the event structure of the verbs **–bamba**, **-gcina** and **–londoloza** in different sentences are also investigated.

Chapter 4 is the conclusion, summarising the findings of all the previous chapters in this study on lexical semantic analysis of the 'hold' verbs **–bamba**, **-gcina** and **–londoloza** in Xhosa.



## OPSOMMING

Hierdie studie ondersoek die leksikaal-semantiese analise van die 'hou' werkwoorde – **bamba**, **-gcina** en **–londoloza** in Xhosa.

In hoofstuk 1 word die doelstellings van die studie uiteengesit. Die teorie van Generatiewe Leksikon van Pustejovsky word ook kortliks bespreek, wat die teoretiese raamwerk is van di studie. Laastens word die organisasie van die studie bespreek.

Hoofstuk 2 bespreek in grote besonderhede die model van Generatiewe Leksikon teorie. 'n Generatiewe teorie van die leksikon sluit in veelvuldige vlakke van representasie vir die verskillende tipes leksikale inligting wat benodig word. Hierdie vlakke van representasie sluit in die Argument struktuur, Gebeure ('Event') struktuur, Qualia struktuur en Leksikale Erf (Inheritance) struktuur. Hoofstuk 2 bied ook in meer detail die struktuur van qualia en die rol wat dit speel in die verspreiding van die funksionele gedrag van woorde en frases in kombinasie.

Hoofstuk 3 ondersoek die leksikaal-semantiese analise van die werkwoorde **–bamba**, **-gcina** en **–londoloza** en die verskeidenheid interpretasies wat beskikbaar is vir hierdie werkwoorde in kombinasie met die komplement argument daarvan. Die polisemiese gedrag van die werkwoorde **–bamba**, **-gcina** en **–londoloza** word ondersoek in sinsalternasiekonstruksies ten opsigte van die gebeure ('event') struktuur. Die leksikale representasie in terme van argument struktuur en die gebeurestruktuur van hierdie werkwoorde in verskillende sinne met verskillende seleksiekenmerke van die subjek, word ook ondersoek.

Hoofstuk 4 is die samevatting van die studie, wat 'n opsomming bied van die vernaamste bevindings van al die vorige hoofstukke van hierdie studie oor die leksikaal-semantiese analise van die werkwoorde **–bamba**, **-gcina** en **–londoloza**.



## ISISHWANKATHELO

Esi sifundo siphonononga uhlalutyo lwesemantiki yezenzi zentshukumo ezikhethwe kwi Sixhosa.

Isahluko 1 injongo yesifundo ixeliwe. Iziphumo zohlalutyo lesemantiki yelekhisikoni yezenzi u –bamba, ugcina kunye no –londoloza ngokunjalo nengcingane yelekhisikoni evelisayo ngokuka Pustejovsky (1996) zixoxiwe. Ubume bengcingane kunye nolungiselelo lwesifundo zikwaxoxiwe kwesi sahluko .

Isahluko 2 siyila indlela emisiweyo yohlobo lwesemantiki yethu. Ingcingane evelisayo yelekhisikoni iquka imigangatho emininzi yenkcazelo ngokwentlobo ezahlukeneyo ezifuna ulwazi lwesemantiki. Eminye yalemigangatho lulwakhiwo lwe –adyument, u lwakhiwo lweSiganeko, ulwakhiwo lwe Khwaliya kunye nolwa Khiwo lobalo. Isahluko 2 sikwabonisa ngokucace kakhulu ngolwakhiwo lwekhwaliya ngendima edlaliweyo ekusasazeni impatho yomsebenzi wamagama kunye namabinzana kwindibaniso.

Isahluko 3 sivavanya ngohlalutyo lwesemantiki yelekhisikoni yezenzi u-bamba ngokwengcaciso yodweliso lwempawu ezikhethiweyo ze-adyument yebinza lesibizo esiyintloko sesenzi u-bamba kunye notoliko olwahlukeneyo oluvela ngokwamagama endibaniso ngokwe –adyument yemfezekiso. Impatho yentsingiselo ezininzi yezenzi u-bamba ivavanyiwe kulwakhiso lotshintshwano lwezivakalisi ngokuhlomela iimpawu zolwakhiwo lwesiganeko inkcazelo yelekhisikoni ngokwamagama olwakhiwo lwe-adyument kunye nolwakhiso lwesiganeko sesenzi u-bamba kwizivakalisi ezahlukeneyo zikwaphengululwe.

Isahluko 4 naso sivavanya ngohlalutyo lwesemantiki yelekhisikoni yezenzi u-gcina kunye no –londoloza ngokwengcaciso yodweliso lweempawu ezikhethiweyo ze –adyument yebinza lesibizo esiyintloko sesenzi u-gcina kunye no-bamba kunye notoliko olwahlukeneyo oluvela ngokwamagama endibaniso ngokwe-adyument yemfezekiso. Impatho yentsingiselo ezininzi yezenzi u-gcina kunye no-londoloza ivavanyiwe kulwakhiwo lotshintshwano lwezivakalisi ngokuhlomela iimpawu zolwakhiwo lwesiganeko. Inkcazelo yelekhisikoni ngokwamagama olwakhiwo lwe-adyument kunye nolwakhiso lwesiganeko yezenzi u-gcina kunye no-londoloza kwizivakalisi ezahlukeneyo zikwaphengululiwe.

## **NRF ACKNOWLEDGEMENT**

The financial assistance of National Research Foundation (NRF) towards this research is hereby acknowledged. Opinions expressed and conclusions arrived at, are those of the author and are not necessarily to be attributed to the National Research Foundation.

## **IMIBULELO**

Uncedo-mali lweNational Research Foundation (NRF) kwesi sifundo ndiyalubulela. Izimvo ezichaziweyo neziqukumbelo ekufikelelwe kuzo zezo zombhali kwaye aziyomfuneko ekubalelweni kwiNational Research Foundation.



**ISIQULATHO**

Abstract .....	ii
Opsomming .....	iii
Acknowledgement .....	iv

**ISAHLUKO 1**

1.1 Injongo zofundo .....	1
1.2 Eliksikhoni evezisayo .....	1
1.3 Ubume bomsebenzi .....	2

**ISAHLUKO 2**

2.1 Isahluko .....	4
2.2 Amahlelo esemantiki kunye notshintsho lwezigaba .....	8
2.2.1 Uguqulo lwezenzi .....	8
2.2.2 Uguqulo lwesibizo .....	12
2.2.3 Ungenwano lweleksikhoni ezinxulumeneyo .....	14
2.3.1 Intsingiselo mbini echaseneyo .....	17
2.3.2 Ulwandiso lwentsingiselo ezininzi .....	19
2.4 Isiqalo sengcingane yesemantiki yeleksikhoni .....	22
2.4.1 Manqaku ethiyori yesemantiki yeleksikhoni .....	27
2.4.2 Ulwakhiwo losetyenziso lwamagama .....	28
2.4.3 Ungeno lula lwamasuntswana amagama .....	32
2.4.4 Umahluko weendlela zokubumba izivakalisi .....	35
2.4.5 Ingcaciso yesemantiki .....	38
2.4.7 Indibaniselwano eyomeleleyo iqubisana nebuthathaka .....	40
2.5 Imigangatho yomelo .....	40
2.5.1 Ulwakhiwo lwe-adyumenti .....	41
2.5.2 Ulwakhiwo lwesiganeko esandisiweyo .....	45
2.5.3 Ulwakhiwo lwekhwaliya .....	47
2.5.4 Intsebenziswano yomgangatho wesemantiki .....	51
2.6 Ulwakhiwo lwe khwaliya .....	51
2.6.1 Imifuziselo yengcaciso .....	52
2.6.2 Ulwakhiwo lwekhwaliya yezibizo .....	53
2.6.3 Utoliko lokufana kwekhwel .....	57
2.6.4 Utoliko lwekhwel .....	58



2.6.5	Utoliko lwelungu lekhwel .....	58
2.6.6	Utoliko lekhweli yetelikhi.....	58
2.6.7	Iindlela ze telikhi .....	59
2.6.8	Uzobo kwikhwalia .....	60
2.7	Imveliso yezixhobo ezisetyenziswayo kwisemantiki .....	61
2.7.1	Unyanzelo kunye notshintsho hlobo.....	62
2.7.2	Unxulumano olunenkukacha ezinzi zeparamitiksi kunye notshintsho-hlobo .....	62
2.7.3	Unyanzelo-hlotyana.....	66
2.7.4	Udibaniselwano / indibaniselwano.....	70
2.7.5	Ukhetho olubophelelekileyo.....	74

### **ISAPLUKO 3: UHLALUTYO LWELEKSIKHALI YESEMANTIKI YESENZI U-BAMBA**

3.1	Intshayelelo .....	77
3.2	Ukhetho ndawonye lwebinza lesibizo esiyintloko kwizivakalisi ezino-bamba	77
3.3	Ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko ngu-mntu (human).....	77
3.4	Ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko sisilwanyana (animal).....	80
3.5	Ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko zizinto zendalo "umhlaba" (natural phenomena) ..	81
3.6	Ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko zizinto ezibunjwayo (artifacts) .....	85
3.6.1	Ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko sisithuthi (vehicle).....	85
3.6.2	Ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko butywala (liquid) .....	87
3.6.3	Ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko sisakhiwo (building) .....	89
3.7	Ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko zezemidlalo (sport and game act, activity) .....	90
3.8	Ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko yimo yokungaphili (state illness).....	92
3.9	Ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko sibonisa isiganeko (event).....	94
3.10	Ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko lulwimi lwengingqi kunye nenkcubeko (society, language, culture) .....	95
3.10.1	Ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko lunxibelelwano (communication) .....	96
3.10.2	Ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko licebiso (advice).....	98
3.11	Ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko sisibizo sesalatha-ndawo (locative noun) .....	100
3.12	Ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko sisibizo sehlelo lendawo (locative class noun) ...	101

### **ISAPLUKO 4: UHLALUTYO LWELEKSIKHALI YESEMANTIKI YESENZI U-GCINA**

4.1	Intshayelelo .....	108
4.2	Ukhetho ndawonye lwebinza lesibizo esiyintloko kwizivakalisi esino-gcina.	108



4.2.1	Ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko ngu-mntu (human).....	108
4.2.2	Ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko sisilwanyana (animal).....	110
4.2.3	Ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko zizinto zendalo (natural phenomena) .....	112
4.2.4	Ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko ngokwesibhaka-bhaka (sky).....	114
4.2.5	Ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko zizinto ezibunjwayo (artifacts) .....	115
4.2.6	Ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko sisithuthi (vehicle).....	117
4.2.7	Ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko bubumnini (possession property) .....	118
4.2.8	Ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko ngamanzi (liquid).....	119
4.2.9	Ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko zezemidlalo (sport and game) (act and activity) .	121
4.2.10	Ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko sisibizo sehlelo-15 (noun class 15).....	123
4.2.11	Ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko lulwimi lwengingqi nenkcubeko .....	125
4.3	Ukhetho ndawonye lwebinza lesibizo esiyintloko kunye nenjongosenzi kwisivakalisi esino-londoloza.....	127
4.3.1	Ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko ngu-mntu (human).....	127
4.3.2	Ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko sisilwanyana (animal).....	129
4.3.3	Ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko zizityalo (plants).....	130
4.3.4	Ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko zizinto zendalo (natural phenomena) .....	133
4.3.5	Ibinza lesibizo esiyinjongosenzi ngo-mntu (human) .....	134
4.3.6	Ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko sisilwanyana (animal).....	135
4.3.7	Ibinza lesibizo esiyinjongosenzi zizinto zendalo (natural phenomena).....	137
4.3.8	Ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko zizinto zasendlwini (Household) .....	138
4.3.9	Ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko iziselo ezingenabungozi (Liquids non-toxicating).....	139
4.3.10	Ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko kukutya (food).....	141
<b>ISAPHLUKO SESIHLANU .....</b>		<b>144</b>
<b>IINCWADI EKUCATSHULWE KUZO .....</b>		<b>148</b>



# ISAPHLUKO 1

## 1.1 INJONGO ZOFUNDO

Ezona njongo zolu fundo kukuqwalasela ukhethe ndawonye lwamabinza ezibizo azintloko kunye nezifizekisi zezi zenzi zilandelayo: u-bamba, u-gcina kunye nolondoloza kwakhona esi sifundo sithi siqwalasele umahluko wamasuntswana ezi zenzi sele zikhankanyiwe ngasentla ukuba zenza njani ukuvelisa indibaniselwano nokuthi siqwalasele isemantiki yezifizekisi zamabinzana ezibizo.

Kwakhona esi sifundo sikwabonisa ukuba ezi zenzi zenza njani ukuphumeza injongo yolwakhiwo lwendawo lwe-adyumenti kunye nolwakhiwo lwe-adyumenti kunye nolwakhiwo lwesiganeko lwezi zenzi, kwaye zithi zihlalutywe ngokoluhlu lwesintaksi kunye nesemantiki yeendawo ekuthethwa kuzo. Kwakhona kwalapha kwesi sifundo uzakuthi uwubone lo mahluko wezi zenzi, kuba ezinye izenzi azikwazi ukuthabatha ezinye iintlobo zezibizo kananjalo nezifizekisi ezithile.

## 1.2 ILEKSIKHONI EVEZISAYO

Ingcingane yeleksikhoni evelisayo ngokuvezwe / ngokubonakaliswe nguPustejovsky inxulumene nesemantiki yeelwimi, kuba iyingxaki yendibaniselwano. Kwakhona uPustejovsky, 1996, ucebisa / uxhasa enjenge le ncwadi yabelana nolwimi lwendalo lwesemantiki, ingakumbi amagama esemantiki, omabini edityanisiwe, kwaye isemantiki yeleksikhali ithi lufundo olubonisa ubunjani nento ethi iboniswe ngamagama olwimi. Indibaniso kunye nengcingane yenzululwazi zolwimi sele ziyixoxe kakhulu ileksikhoni kwaye ziyithatha njengengqokelela emileyo yamasuntswana amagama aphawulwa neempawu zolwakhiwo lwesivakalisi, imofoloji kunye nenkcazelo yesemantiki.

Kwakhona uPustejovsky uxoxa enjenge, phantsi kwalo-mbono, amasuntswana amagama ahlukeneyo sele kukudala anxulunyaniswa neeleksikhali ezahlukeneyo kunye nengcinga zolwimi lwendalo lwesemantiki lwenze kancinci ukumisela imiba emibini ebalulekileyo:

- Umba wokuqala, ulwakhiwo losetyenziso lwamagama kwindawo entsha.
- Umba wesibini, uphononongo lwsemifuziselo yesemantiki yeleksikhoni kwisiseko sendibaniselwano.



Kwakhona uPustejovsky, kolu fundo ucacisa ngokuphandle, eqwalasela intsebenziswano yentsingiselo yegama kunye nodibaniselwano njengoko zinxulumana. Pustejovsky uxoxa enjenje ngokuselubala / ngokwaneleyo ingxaki yokudalwa kwamasuntswana egama, emisela ngqo umba wendibaniselwano, ingcingane yentsingiselo yeleksikhali izaku luchaphazela jikelele uyilo / umiselo lwengcingane yesemantiki ngendlela ezininzi: ukuba inqaku lengcingane yesemantiki lingabonwanga njengento yokwabelana ngentsingiselo ngokuphinda-phindeneyo kwintetho, kwakhona uqwalasela izigama ezinjengezi, isithetha nto-nye, isichasi, amagama antsingiselo-ninzi kunye nemethonimi, emva koko indibaniselwano ixhomekeke ekugqibeleni kwisiseko solwimi oluboniswa ludidi lweleksikhali.

Kwakhona uPustejovsky, ukhumbula indlela ezinye iziseko zemiba, kumelo lweleksikhali kwaye lubonisa owona mbono wokuba ungayibonisa njani imbono-mbini yeleksikhali, kwimifuziselo yengcingane kunye nendibaniso. Lo mbono ubandakanya "isixhobo sesuntswana lobalo" esahlukanisa amasuntswana egama phantsi kwesiseko sokwahlula uphawu lwesivumelanisi. Kwakhona uPustejovsky ebhekiselela kuWeinreich, 1994, uxoxa enjenje, le ndlela ayenzi mahluko phakathi kwentsingiselo-mbini echaseneyo kunye nolwandliso lwentsingiselo ezininzi.

Kwakhona uphinda atyatyadule enjenje, ngaphambili sisiseko somabizwafane apho ileksikhali ngokungalindelekanga ithwala iintsingiselo ezimbini ezahlukeneyo kwaye azinxulumani, nangona isiqingatha sibhekiselele kwingqiqo yamasuntswana anxulumeneyo egama leleksikhali enye.

Kwakhona uPustejovsky, utsho esithi, eyona ngqokelela, ingundoqo yamasuntswana egama nolwakhiwo olukhulu lwangaphakathi kukuba luqikelelwe kwingcingane zangaphambili, isetyenziswe ekuveliseni eyona ngqokelela inkulu yamasuntswana egama apho ileksikhali idityaniswa nezinye kumabinzana kunye namagatya.

Kwakhona uPustejovsky ebhekiselela kulo mbutho njenge mveliso yeleksikhoni kunye nemisebenzi evelise "la masuntswana adityanisiweyo" njenga macebo emveliso ukuquka imisebenzi enje, ngonyanzelo-hlobo kunye nendibaniselwano.

### **1.3 UBUME BOMSEBENZI**

Isahluko sokuqala siza kuthi siphuhlise injongo yolu fundo lwesemantiki kunye nohlelo lwezenzi u-bamba u-gcina kunye nolondoloza.

Isahluko sesibini siza kuthi sikunike uphando lwangaphambili lwesemantiki yeleksikhoni. Kwakhona ingcali uPustejovsky uzakube esibonisa ngohlelo lwezenzi.

Isahluko sesithathu siza kuthi sijongane no-bamba njenge senzi kwaye siza kuthi siqwalasele ukhethe ndawonye lwamabinzana ezibizo azintloko kunye nezifizekisi zesenzi u-bamba. Wothi emva kwakhona udibane namaqhalo kwa kwesi sahluko kodwa pha emva. Umelo lweleksikhali yesemantiki nalo luthi lufumaneka.

Isahluko sesine sona siza kuthi sijongane no-gcina kunye nolondoloza kwaye nokhetho ndawonye lwamabinza ezibizo azintloko kunye nezifizekisi zesenzi u-gcina kunye nolondoloza. Umelo lweleksikhali yesemantiki nalo luza kuthi luboniswe ngezantsi kohlelo.

Isahluko sesihlanu kulapho uzakuthi ufumane khona isishwankathelo sesifundo sisonke.



## ISAHLUKO 2

### 2.1 ISAHLUKO

Kwesi sahluko, UPustejovsky umisela imiba emibini ebizwa ngokuba yindibaniselwano kunye nesuntswana lentsingiselo.

Ngokuka Pustejovsky, lencwadi yabelana nolwimi lwendalo lwesemantiki ingakumbi amagama esemantiki, omabini edityanisiwe, umzekelo ingxaki yendibaniselwano. Kwaye ithi isemantiki yeleksikhali lufundiso olubonisa ubunjani nento ethi iboniswe ngamagama olwimi. Indibaniso kunye nengcingane yenzululwazi zolwimi seziyixoxe kakhulu ileksikhoni kwaye ziyithatha njenge ngqokelela emileyo yamasuntswana amagama aphawulwa neempawu zolwakhiwo lwesivakalisi (sintakthikhali), imofoloji kunye nenkcazelo yesemantiki.

UPustejovsky uxoxa enjenje, phantsi kwalombono, amasuntswana amagama ahlukeneyo sele kukudala jikelele anxulumaniswa neleksikhali ezahlukeneyo, kunye neengcinga zolwimi lwendalo lwesemantiki lwenze kancinci ukumisela imiba emibini ebalulekileyo:

- Ulwakhiwo losetyenziso lwamagama kwindawo entsha.
- Uphononongo lwemifuziselo yesemantiki yeleksikhoni kwisiseko sendibaniselwano. Kolu fundo UPustejovsky uqwalasela intsebenziswano yentsingiselo yegama, Kunye nodibaniselwano njengoko zinxulumana. Kwakhona uxoxa enjenje ngokubala ngokwaneleyo ingxaki yokubalwa kwamasuntswana egama ngqo emisela umba wendibaniselwano. Ingcinga yentsingiselo yeleksikhali izakuluchaphazela jikelele uyilo / umiselo lwengcinga yesemantiki ngendlela ezininzi. Ukuba inqaku lengcinga yesemantiki ingabonwa njengento yokwabelana ngentsingiselo ngokuphinda-phindeneyo kwintetho, aqwalasele izigama ezinjengezi, isithetha ntonye, isichasi, amagama antsgingiselo ninzi kunye nemethonimi, emva koko indibaniselwano ixhomekeke ekugqibeleni kwisiseko solwimi oluboniswa ludidi lweleksikhali.

UPustejovsky uxoxa enjenje, ukuba indlela emiselweyo itshintsha / iguqula indlela enokuthi ziboniswe ngayo indidi, emva koko ubumbo lwendibaniselwano luyaguquka / luyatshintsha. Kwakhona UPustejovsky ukhumbula kwakhona ezinye iziseko zemiba,



kumelo lweleksikhali kwaye lubonisa owona mboniso wokuba ungayibonisa njani imbono-mbini yeleksikhali, kwimifuziselo yengcinga kunye nendibaniso. Lo mbono ubandakanya "isixhobo sesuntsu lobalo" elahlukanisa amasuntswana egama phantsi kwesiseko sokwahlula uphawu lwesivumelanisi. Kwakhona ebhekiselela ku-Weinreich, 1994, uxoxa enjenje, lindlela ayenzi mahluko phakathi kwentsingiselo mbini echaseneyo kunye nolwandiso lwentsingiselo ezininzi. Ngaphambili sisiseko somabizwafane apho ileksikhali ngokungalindelekanga ithwala iintsingiselo ezininzi ezahlukeneyo kwaye azinxulumani, nangona isiqingatha sibhekiselela kwingqiqo yamasuntswana anxulumeneyo egama eleksikhali enye.

Kwakhona UPustejovsky, uguqukela kwakule ngxaki inye nendlela yocwangciso yenkcazelo yeleksikhali, izakubonisa ukuba olu melo luqikelelwa zingcinga alanelanga ekucaciseni obona butyebi bolwimi lwendalo lwesemantiki khangela lamacebiso kufutshane, umbono womahluko wesemantiki yeleksikhali kunye nokuba idityaniswa njani intsingiselo yegama. UPustejovsky ungqala athi, phantsi kwale ngcinga, eyona ngqokelela ingundoqo yamasuntswana egama nolwakhiwo olukhulu lwangaphakathi kunokuba luqikelelwe kwingcingane zangaphambili, isetyenziswa ekuveliseni eyona ngqokelela inkulu yamasuntswana egama apho ileksikhali idityaniswa nezinye kumabinzana kunye namagatya.

UPustejovsky ubhekiselela kulo mbutho njenge mveliso yeleksikoni kunye nemisebenzi evelise' "lamasuntswana adityanisiweyo" njengamacebo emveliso ukuquka imisebenzi enje ngonyanzelo-hlobo kunye nendibaniselwano.

Kwakhona UPustejovsky, uxoxa ukuba lo mbono uwuxhasa njani umbono wengcaciso yemifuziselo yesemantiki kwaye uqwalasela amanqaku engcinga zenzulu-lwazi zolwimi jikelele kunye ngokukodwa isemantiki yeleksikhali. Kwakhona uxoxa enjenje, ubume bolwazi beleksikhali mabukhokelwe ngokunxulumana ngokwesemantikhalithi ukongeza kwigramathikhalithi. Umfuziselo wotoliko lwesemantiki kufuneka lubonise uphawu kunye neenzima zolwimi lwendalo kwaye hayi ibelula ukusetyenziswa njengento elungele ukunxitywa ngokusesikweni kwindawo entsha.

Kwakhona ukhumbula ukuba iilwimi zendalo njengezibekwe kumanqwanqwa eenkcazelo zesemantiki, zichazwa ngokwemvelaphi yayo nonxulumano olunenkukacha ezininzi zemveliso enamandla. Kwakhona uxoxa enjenje, ulwimi lwendalo luthi luwe ngaphakathi



kwiilwimi ezinonxulumano olunenkukacha ezininzi ezibuthathaka ngokubonakalayo kuno nxulumano olunenkukacha enye, kodwa ngaphantsi / ngezantsi kwamandla eelwimi ezinonxulumano oluneenkukacha ezininzi ezingenasithintelo. Le nkcazelo ityebe ngokwaneleyo ukuthimba / ukubamba okukuziphatha kwengqiqo enentsingiselo ezininzi kananjalo neziphumo zendibaniselwano.

Kweli candelo lendalo yolwazi lweleksikhoni umbhali umisela amahlelo ezenzi, nokuba yenzeka njani intsingiselo yezenzi imisele indlela yobumbo zivakalisi kwaye kwenzeka njani amasuntswana ezenzi ukuze adityaniswe:

Ngokwengqwalasela ka-Pustejovsky, 1996, kwiminyakana nje embalwa edlulileyo, kwavunyelwana kwithiyori nakwingcali zobalo zencwadi zesikhokelo ukusongela zonke iimfuno ezisongela ileksikhoni kwisahluko ngokukhawulezileyo, phambi kokufikelela kumtsalane kunye nezihloko ezingqinelana nobumbo zivakalisi kunye notoliko lwesemantiki.

Lo nto ithetha ukuba amandla entsongelo namhlanje angaphantse angakwazi ukuvelisa umdla wendawo yophando ngeleksikhoni okanye umbindi wendawo edlalwa lulwazi lweleksikhoni kwithiyori yolwimi kunye nenkqubo yemifuziselo. Yathelekelelwa kakhulu ngabamiseli belwimi (ngokwekhomputha kunye nathiyorethikhali) ukuba uninzi lolwakhiwo lwesivakalisi lulona.

UPustejovsky ukholelwa ekubeni, ezona ngxaki ziqhubekekayo zesemantiki yeleksikhali zezi zilandelayo:

- (a) Kucacisa unxulumano olunenkukacha ezininzi zelwimi lendalo.
- (b) Kukucacisa isemantikhalithi yentethwano zolwimi lwendalo.
- (c) Kukuthimba ulwakhiwo losetyenziso magama kwindawo entsha
- (d) Ukuphuhlisa ubutyebi bendibaniselwano yomelo lwesemantiki

Kwakhona uPustejovsky 1996, uceba ukuxoxa izinto ezimbini ezizakuthi zidandalazise amacebo omiselo lwesemantiki yeleksikhoni.

Eyokuqala yile, ngaphandle kokunconywa kobumbo lolwakhiwo lwesivakalisi solwimi, ufundo lwesemantiki yeleksikhoni luyanyanzeleka lungaphumeleli. Akukho ndlela



inokwenza ukuba intsingiselo yahlulwe ngokugqibeleleyo kulwakhiwo eluthweleyo. Ingongoma yesibini yile, ngokubhekiselele kuLevin kunye noRappoport, 1986, uPustejovsky ucaphula kubo athi, isemantiki yeleksikhoni kufuneka ithathe iinkcazelo ezivokothekileyo kunenkcazelo yethemathikhi. Kwakhona ekwabhekiselela kuLevin kunye noRappoport, 1986, uPustejovsky uhambisa athi, uthiyo lweendawo lusebenza bhetele ekupapasheni ubulungisa jikelele nobuchule bokubumba isivakalisi kulwimi. Le nto ithetha ukuthi umahluko owenzekayo kwindawo yethemathikhi inqongophele kakhulu ukubonelela utoliko lwesemantiki yesivakalisi.

Eyona nto iyimfuneko ngumthetho-siseko wokwahlula ileksikhoni ibe ngamacandelo. Ingongoma yesithathu, inxulumene nale siyishiyayo, isemantiki yeleksikhoni kufuneka ifunde onke amanqwanqwa obumbo lwesivakalisi ukuze ikwazi ukuchaza isemantiki yolwimi lwendalo. Lo nto iyaphikisana neentsingiselo zakutsha nje zenkcazelo yesemantiki, ileksikhoni kufuneka ize ingxelo yezigaba ngaphandle kwezenzi.

Kwakhona ebhekiselela / ecaphula kuLevin, 1985, uPustejovsky, 1986, uqwalasela le nto, kutsha nje umsebenzi omninzi sele wenze lukhulu ukucacisa indalo yamahlelo ezenzi kunye nobumbo lwezivakalisi athi azilandele. Indawo yophando leleksikhoni kufuneka ibengaphakathi kumboniso wesemantiki, ukususela kumalinge angaphambili okuqonda ubunyani besicatshulwa, oyena ndoqo wengxaki ngulo wokunqanda iintelekelelo ezinxulumene nenkqubo yotoliko. Ngamanye amagama bunjani ubunzulu okanye ubungabinabunzulu bokunqanda isicatshulwa? Yintoni ubumbano lolwakheko xa usenza ulwimi lwendalo luqondakale, yintetha, yimihlathi? Ayikho indlela elula yokuphendula le mibuzo kuba, ngaphandle kwesivakalisi loo magama akabekwanga nangendlela eyiyo apho abaphandi banokuvumelana khona.

Imbono zikaPustejovsky zithi, ulwazi lwendalo ekuthethwa kuyo intetho inokubonwa njengequka iimveliso ezininzi ezithi zibale indlela abathi abasebenzisi bolwimi bazidale kwaye balawule indawo ekuthethwa kuyo phantsi kwemiqathango / kothintelo ukuze ikwazi ukuqondakala. Iziphumo zalo mbono zezi, utoliko lwesemantiki luqhubekeka ngokomthetho-siseko wangoku, rhoqo iyazi imvelaphi ye-infrensi kwaye yintoni nengqiniseko yexabiso layo. Lo mbono uvumela inkqubo yokucinga ibenobuchule kwaye nangokwekhompuyutha ibenobuchule. Ulwazi lwesemantiki yeleksikhoni izakubonisa njengenemigangatho emininzi kubutyebi bokuchaza ulwakhiwo lendawo ekuthethwa kuyo.



## 2.2 AMAHLELO ESEMANTIKI KUNYE NOTSHINTSHO LWEZIGABA

Eli candelo lijongene namahlelo esemantiki kunye nenguqulo yesigaba. Ngokuka Pustejovsky uxoxa athi, kwisithethe sokufana kwesemantiki esona siseko siyinxalenye yentsingiselo yegama mhlawumbi luhlobo lwesemantiki. Ecaphula kuMontague, (1974) uPustejovsky uxoxa athi, kulo mbono, isigaba sengxelo /solwazi asilawuli kuphela ukuba igama liziphatha njani na ngokobumbo lwesivakalisi, kodwa kunye neziqalo zezigaba ekubhekiselelwa kuzo. Umzekelo, isenzi u-love kunye no-hate zizakubonwa njengonxulumaniso phakathi kwezinto ezizimeleyo elizweni, nangona isibizo women equka yonke ingqokelela engumntu obhinqileyo (women) ehlabathini. Kwakhona uPustejovsky ebhekiselela kuChomsky, 1955, Harris, 1951, uza nesindululo esithi, ngenxa yobubanzi bokwahlula-hlula ingqokelelanyana ezikhethekileyo zamalungu ezo zigaba. Kwaye ngokuqhelekileyo, le nto iphunyezwa ngokuthi uphicothu ulwahlulo kwiziseko zovumelwano magama kunye novavanyo lonyanzelo hlobo.

### 2.2.1 Uguqulo lwezenzi

Ngokuka Pustejovsky, 1996, kutsha nje eyona ndlela isetyenziswayo yokuphuhlisa /yokuvelisa ulwimi yokuqokelela intsingiselo kukufundisa imifuziselo yobumbo lwesivakalisi igama elithatha inxaxheba ukuthi uguqulo lwegrama efanayo.

Ngokubhekiselele ku-Levin, 1993, uPustejovsky unika uhlelo olubanzi lwenguqulelo lwe adyumenthi yezenzi ngesiNgesi ukuze ukwazi ukuhlela izenzi zibe nentsingiselo yamahlelwana azimeleyo. Umzekelo, sick, roll kunye no - break zonke zinenjongosenzi ezinye ezinayo, apho isuntsu leleksikhoni linxulunyaniswa ngotoliko lophawulo lwesenzisa.

Umzekelo:

- 1      (a) The boat sank in stormy weather.  
      (b) The plane sank in boat in stormy weather.
  
- 2      (a) The ball rolled down the hill.  
      (b) Bill rolled the ball down the hill.

- 3 (a) The letter arrived on time.  
(b) The mailman arrived the letter on time.
- 4 (a) The block tower felled.  
(b) Zachary felled the block tower.
- 5 (a) The letter arrived on time.  
(b) The mailman arrived the letter on time.

Isivakalisi 4(b) kunye no-5(b) abanabugrama kwaye ngaphandle kwamathandabuzo ziyaqondakala. Ngoku isemantiki yeleksikhoni kufuneka icacisile yintoni le lamahlelo mabini abelana ngayo, into enje ngokuba zombini zinegrama engenanjongosenzi, kodwa into ebalulekileyo yinkcazelo yokuba zahluka njani, into enjengokuba ihlelo le - latter aliyivumeli injongosenzi. Kukho imizekelo ebonisa imifuziselo yoguqulo equka uzalwano.

- 7 (a) The cat touches my leg.  
(b) The cat touched at my leg.
- 8 (a) Marry shot the arrow (at target).  
(b) Marry shot at arrow.

Ngokuka Pustejovsky, le mizekelo sele ichaziwe ngentla ku-7b kunye no-8b azinabugrama, umbuzo kutheni? Lo nto ixhomekeke ekubeni ezo zenzi zinentsingiselo zingamelwa ngokweleksikhali. Le mizekelo ingentla ibonisa igalelo legrama yoguqulo ayibonisi ngokwaneleyo amahlelo ezenzi zesemantiki. Kodwa qonda lento, ukucacisa ukuziphatha kwamahlelo esemantiki ingenza kuphela ekwazini iimifuziselo yobumbo lwezivakalisi kuguqulo, azizimelanga ekuthwaleni ulwazi ngokuchaza I adyumenti yemifuziselo ngokwayo. UPustejovsky, uveza indlela enokusetyenziswa, yile, ulwahlulo lwenguqulelo aluyenyuli ithiyori: Ebhekiselela ku - Brusman 1982, Fillmore 1986, kunye no-Levin 1993, uPustejovsky, ugqala athi, ayikho I-adyumenti etshintsha iinguqulelo ezinjengezi-nguqulelo sele zixoxiwe ngentl' apha, kodwa kukho inguqulelo ye-adyumenti edukileyo /eshiyiweyo.



Umzekelo :

- 9 (a) The dog devoured the cookies.  
(b) The dog devoured.
- 10 (a) John gulped his beer feverishly.  
(b) John gulped feverishly.
- 11 (a) The woman ate her meal quickly.  
(b) The woman ate quick.

Kule mizekelo ingentla, isenzi u - eat ubonisa isenzeko sexesha elingenamida /elikhululekileyo. Devour omnye angaxoxa enjenje, ubonisa injongosenzi, nangona isenzi u-devour jikelele unxulumene nesenzi esibalulayo isenzi u-eat, uthwele I-implikhetsha egqibeleleyo engekho ku-eat. Kwelinye icala uPustejovsky ucaphula kuFillmore, 1986, ngelithi, kukho imiba apho izithetha ntonye zibonakala ziziphatha ngokwahlukileyo kwinxalenye yokuvumela isifezekisi. Banokuyilindela ukuba icacise ngemifuziselo yoshiyo lweminye imiba yofezekiso. Cinga ngale mizekelo ilandelayo.

- 12 (a) Marry tried to start her car in the morning.  
(b) Marry tried in the morning.

Kwesi sihlandlo uPustejovsky, 1992 uqwalasela athi kweminye imiba unyanzeliso lwentetho yenqaku luyashiywa kwaye isenzi sibuya sibe yinjongosenzi. Olo guqulo lwegram lungasetyenziswa kwigrama yonke yolwimi ukwenza isemantiki eyahlukileyo phantsi kwesiseko sokuziphatha kobumbo zivakalisi, kwaye kwakhona isafuneka ukuze icacise ukuba kutheni ezi ntlobo zegrama ziyinxalenye yoguqulelo oluthile lwehlelo. Kwakhona uPustejovsky, ucinga olunye uhlelo lwakudala lwesemantiki yezenzi, eyinxalenye yohlelo. Umbono obalulekileyo ngaphaya kolu hlelo lolu lokuba izenzi kunye namabinzana ezenzi ziyahluka kwintlobo zeziganeko ezizicacisayo kwilizwe liphela. Kukho intlobo ezintathu zenxenywe eziqikelelwayo / ezithathwa njengeziyinyaniso : Ubume / imeko, isenzeko, kunye nesiganeko ,apho eli hlelo lokugqibezela ngokwalo lithi ngamanye amaxesha lahluke kubini, isifezekisi, kunye nempumezo:

Umzekelo:

- 25 (a) Marry walked yesterday.  
(b) Marry walked to her house yesterday.

Isenzi ku-25(a) sibonisa isenzeko sexesha elingaphuhlanga. Esi sivakalisi asiguquli ulwazi ngokubhekiselele kwisenzeko sexeshana, nangona elixeshana sele lidlulile elenza isiphelo. Isivakalisi esiku-25 sithi siguqule kwale ngxelo olu lwazi lunye luku (25a) ngokongeza unyanzelo, lokuba uMarry eyeke isenzeko sakhe sokuhamba aye endlwini. Isivumelwano sokugqibela senxalenye esichazwe ngu-Pustejovsky esifumana ku-Dowty, 1979, sisifezi. Isiphumezi sisiganeko esinemiphumeza yotshintsho lobume /lwemeko njengesifezi sisenza kodwa apho inguqulelo yenzeka ngokwamathuba.

Umzekelo:

- 30 (a) John died at 3pm.  
(b) John found his wallet at 3pm.  
(c) Marry arrived at 12 noon.

Ebhekiselela ku-Dowty, 1979, uPustejovsky uchaza enjenje, ezi zivakalisi zingentla inguqu iza kancinane, kodwa yinto enenqaku eliyilingeneyo. Nanjengoko, inguqulelo ngenqaku lezihlomelo ezinjengo 3pm ibonakalisa ukuba isivakalisi sichaza impumelelo. Ebhekiselela ku-Corden, 1977, kunye no - Kratzer, 1989, uPustejovsky, wahlula intlobo ezimbini zobume /zemeko, zezivisa, umgangatho kunye nomgangatho wendawo. Le ntlobo yokugqibezela yenxalenye bubume.

Isivisa esinjengo , intelligent kunye no-weight zinokucingelwa njenge mpawu anokuthi umntu azigcine malunga/phantse ubomi bonke, kwaye zinokuqatshelwa emntwini wazo. . Kukho imigangatho ezimeleyo yezivisa iimpawu ezinjengo hungry kunye no- sick ziqhele ukuchongwa neemeko zomntu ezingesosigxina kwaye zibizwa ngokomgangatho wesivisa sendawo.

Umzekezo:

- (36) (a) John drank himself sick with that cheap brandy.  
(b) Watching the commercial on tv made John hungry.



Eli hlelo libonakala njengohlobo olwakhiwe lwanesiphumo njengesiphelo / ukuphelelwa kwesivisa njengoko ibonisiwe kwimizekelo engentla. Uphawu lokugqibela lokungafaneleki kwe - Paradox, uBosch, 1986, no-Dowty, 1979- baquka into enokwenza bafumane inxalenye yenkqubo. Ukuze ukwazi ukubonisa indalo yale Paradox, khawucinge ngezi zivakalisi ziku 38.

(38) (a) John is running.

(b) John is building a house (therefore John has build a house).

Ezi zivakalisi zingentla ku 38 (a) zibonisa isenzeko kwaye iquka intetho John has run. Lo nto ithetha ukuthi uJohn kudala ebalekile. Kwisivakalisi u-38 (b) sifumana uJohn esakha indlu, kuba ukwakha. Akukho hlobo lunye /akufani kodwa iphelela kuguqulo lwemeko /lwemo kuthiwa sisifezi. Upustejovsky, ungxengeza athi, ithiyori yesemantiki yeleksikhali kufuneka ikwazi ukubalela le mpatho kwaye hayi ukuyisebenzisa nje ukwahlula intetha kwintlobo zenxalenye.

### 2.2.2 Uguqulo lwesibizo

Ebhekiselela ku-Pecetier kunye no-Schubert, 1989, Link, 1985, uPustejovsky, uxoxa ngelithi, izenzi zinobugrama bokuziphatha, kuxhomekeke kwisigaba sesemantiki. Olona fundo lohlukileyo lwezibizo zesemantiki lolu u-count vs mass. Lo ngumahluko wamhla mnene kwi Aristokle kwaye kutsha nje sele idlale indawo enkulu ekwakhiweni komfuziselo wesemantiki yolwimi umzekelo:

39 (a) Mass nouns: Much sand, more water.

(b) Count nouns: Several houses, every child.

Le mizekelo ingentla ibonisa ukuba bobunjani obubuchule bubodwa bunokwenza sazi / sibone ukuba sithetha njani ngabo, nanjengoko isanti yenziwe yayintlabathi sisibizo esikhulu kwaye ibhekiselele kubuchule kumava ethu emihla ngemihla. Indlu kwelinye icala, iyaqondakala njengento ezimeleyo kwaye ihlelwa njengesibizo sobalo. Upustejovsky, uqhubekeka athi, kukho izibizo ezitolikwa njenge-mass kunye nobalo, ziquka I-beer, apho sithetha ngobuninzi bento, umzekelo:



- 40 (a) The texans drink a lot of beer.  
 (b) Patsy relishes every beer she drinks

Kwakhona uPustejovsky, ubhekiselele ku Pellertier kunye no-Schubert, no-Link 1983, xa besithi umahluko wesemantiki onxulumene nesibizo (mass) kunye nobalo luphakathi kwesibizo esinye neqela lezibizo kwaye naleyo yohlulwe ngesivisa. Umzekelo, iqela lezibizo zanelisa imfuno zesinye kukhetho, njengoko ibonisiwe ku-41

41. (a) The committe met for lunch.  
 (b) The crowd dispersed after the police introducing the tear gas.

Ngokwenjongo zothinteleko lwe anafori iqela lezibizo alilingani ngokupheleleyo ngokwesininzi sebinzana lesenzi. Onke lamahlelo ezibizo axoxiweyo bezisenzeka ngendlela elinganayo ngqo. Ezi zibini women kunye no - water, xa zisetyenziswa kwibinzana lesibizo, zibhekiselela kwinto ezimeleyo yodwa kweli lizwe. Izibizo ezinxulumanayo zizimele kwelinye ngohlobo elizicacisa ngalo.

Umzekelo: brother and neighbour ibonisa unxulumano lo mntu ngendlela ezithile.Lo nto inika ifuthe kule yantlukwano inomdla

- 42 (a) The man arrived yesterday.  
 (b) The neighbour arrived yesterday.

Ngokubhekiselele ku-Bierwisch, 1983, noEscherbach, 1993, uPustejovsky ugqala athi, ezintlobo zimbini zonxulumano lwezibizo zingohlulwa ngentlonipho yempatho zesininzi. Izibizo ezinjenge neighbour kunye no - sister: Unxulumano oluthe tyaba ngelixa u-father kunye no-daughter bebonisa unxulumano ngokwamanqwanqwa. Kwakolu hlelo, isibizo daughter sizimele kunxulumano kwaye siziphethe ngokwahlukileyo ku-father into ethi ngumntu ozimeleyo. Ngoku eyona ndawo ibalaseleyo iza kuphucula ukwamkeleka kwebinzana lesibizo.

- 43 (a) The daughter is in the house.  
 (b) The daughters are gathering upstairs.  
 (c) The fathers are meeting tomorrow.



Umahluko phakathi kobalo kunye nesenzeko okanye unxulumano ziyakhuthazwa ngumahluko wokuziphatha kwegrama kananjalo njenge mvelaphi yolwahlulo lwesemantiki mhlawumbi inika ifuthe kule yantlukwano.

Eyona ndlela isemthethweni yohlelo lwesibizo isekelwe okokuba yintoni izibizo eziyicacisayo kwihlabathi. Umzekelo, umahluko phakathi kwezibizo ezomeleleyo (concrete) ezinje ngo-women, boy, horse kananjalo i-grass, water kunye no-gold (mass noun) kunye nento engaphathekayo, izibizo ezinjenge xesha (time) place, age kunye ne-shape.

### 2.2.3 Ungenwano lweleksikhoni ezinxulumeneyo

UPustejovsky uthetha enjenje, ngaphandle kokwahlula amagama abengamaqela esemantiki yamahlelwana, isemantiki yeleksikhali lufundo lokuba kwenzeka njani ukuba amagama anxulumane namanye ngokwesemantiki. Kweli icandelo ingqwalasela iza kuba kula mahlelo mahlanu onxulumano lweleksikhoni:

1. Isithetha ntonye.
2. Isichazi.
3. Hyponymy and Inheritance.
4. Imeronymy.
5. Isinxulumano.

UPustejovsky, ucaphula ku-Lyons, 1977, Cruse, 1986, ubanga enjenje, isithetha ntonye jikelele sithathwa njengonxulumano phakathi kwamagama, kunamagama azimeleyo. Omnye umgangatho omhle wenkcaza uthi zimbini intetha zezithetha ntonye ukuba ususa enye intetha uyisusela enye kwindawo ekuthethwa kuyo ayitshintshi bunyani bexabiso besivakalisi, apho uso belenziwe khona. Ezinye iinkcaza uthelekiso kususo olunxulumene nendawo ekuthethwa kuyo, umzekelo kwindawo yomchweli (carpenter) plank kunye ne - board (ibhodi) zingathathwa ngokuba zizithetha ntonye kodwa hayi nakwezinye iindawo zokuthetha (kucatshulwe ku-Miller, 1990) Upustejovsky, utyatyadula enjenje, iqatshelwe ukuba, isithetha-ntonye sichazwa ngokosuso lwentetha lo nto ithi, lunxulumano longeno lwesigaba, izibizo zesibizo, izenzi zezenzi. Kwakhona uPustejovsky ecaphula ku-Miller, 1991, naku Cruse, 1986 ugqala enjenje, isichasi



lunxulumano oluchazwa ngokwesemantiki yochasaniso. Kwaye nesithetha ntonye sichazwa ngokupheleleyo ngaphaya kwephezi zeleksikhali kunamagama azimeleyo.

Imizekelo yezichasi nantsi:

Rise/ fall, heavy/light, fast / slow

Yenza / inika umdla into yokuqwalasela ukuba ukhuphulwano / uveliswano lubonisa ukuba isithetha ntonye asithi sifune ukwabelana nezichasi, umzekelo, rise and ascend no- fall / descend ziyafana ngokwentsingiselo, akukho nanye ku - fall /ascend noba ngu - rise / descend ziphezi zezichasi. Ngaphambili unxulumano lweleksikhoni osele lufundiwe kudibaniso loluntu yihayiphonimi ingakumbi unxulumano luchazwa kukufunyanwa kwe-network, umzekelo ngokuphandle / cacileyo imoto (car) njenge hayiphonimi yemoto iyafana nokuthi imoto (vehicle) lelona gama likhulu lizimeleyo kunegama elizimeleyo okanye ingqokelela yemoto (car) yingqokelelana yezomoto zizimeleyo ezichaza ngokwengqokelela yemoto (vehicle). Ngokuka Pustejovsky, uqhuba enjenje xa ecaphula, ku-Brahman kunye no-Schomolze, 1985, no-Hobbs, 1987, olona nxulumano lunzima kakhulu lweleksikhali ekuyichazeni kunye nasekuyiphatheni ngokufanelekileyo lolo lwemerinimi, unxulumaniso lwendawo yonke. Unxulumano luyafana nolwazi lomelo lolwimi nesivisa okanye amagama ezinto ezithile njengendawo –ye, kunye yenziwe –nge.

Olunye uhlonipho olubalulekileyo apho amagama anokuthi anxulumane kungekho nxulumaniso. Nangona kungekho sigqibo siqinisekileyo, sokuba lungachazwa njani olu nxulumano, mnye umahluko owenziweyo/oyiliweyo ngulo ulandelayo: intetha eku-a ngokwesemantiki iquka intetha eku-b ukuba qha yonke imeko eyenza u-a anyaniseke, yenza no-b anyaniseke, kunye no-b kuzo zonke iimeko, apho u-a engeyonyani, u-b unyanisile (kucatshulwe ku-Strwson, 1952, Keenan, 1972). Ukuze ubone ukuba lamagama abaluleke kangakanani ukubonisa intsingiselo yeleksikhoni. Qwalasela ukuba u-60 (a) uyiquka kanjani ingxaki echazwa sisivakalisi u-60 (b)

- 60 (a) John killed Bill.  
 (b) Bill died.  
 (c) Bill is dead.

Ithetha ukuthi kukho isiganeko sokubulala. Emva koku kukho isiganeko sokufa. UPustejovsky, ecaphula ku - Jackendoff, 1983, u-Dowty, 1979, uthetha enjenje, ukuthimba olo quko lonxulumano yeyona nto eyakhuthaza ukwahlulwa kweleksikhoni ibe



ngamacandelo kulwimi ngo-1960 kwaye isakhuthaza uphando olukhulu /oluninzi. La bulala uyaquka kunokuba ucingele isiganeko esinxulumene no-kufa iye icaca xa uqwalasela inkanyelo ka-60 a apho kungekho siganeko sakufa senzekileyo.

Kwesi sahluko UPustejovsky, ukhumbula isiseko samalungu olwazi ayimfuneko kwinkcaza yeleksikhon. Apha UPustejovsky uguqukela kwingxaki yembono. Mbini yeleksikhon. Eyona mpatho yenkcaza yeleksikhali semantiki kulwimi kufuneka ivumele abantu ukuba bacacise ngokupheleleyo ukuziphatha kwembono mbini kwakunye nenkqubo yokhetho kwigrama. Ukuba yenziwe ngokulungileyo, iza kwenza lula inkcaza yesemantiki kunye negrama yolwimi. Kwakhona uveza izinto ezimbini eziyimilinganiselo yengxalki yembonombini yeleksikhali kwaye uxoxa owona mfuziseko ulula weleksikhal ethi yenze kubalelwe ezi fenomena.

### 2.3 UKWANBISA UKUGUQUGUQUKA KWESUNTSU LENTSINGISELO

Ecaphula ku-weinreich, 1964, UPustejovsky, uqwalasela enjenje, ngokuqinisekileyo iyinyaniso ukuba amagama amaninzi kwilimi anentsingiselo engaphezulu kwenye ngokuqhelekileyo oluphawu silubiza ukuba zintsingiselo ezininzi: koolwa kukho iindlela apho amagama athwala uphinda phindo lwentsingiselo anakho ukutshintsha. Umizekelo whlula iindidi ezimbini zentsingiselo-mbini, eyokuqala uyibiza ukuba yintsingiselo mbini echaseneyo. Le ibonakala ngokuzenzekelayo apho igama leleksikhonsi lithawala ingcaciso ezimbini ezintsingiselo ezichaseneyo (oomabizwafane) imizekelo yoku ibonakaliswe ngezantsi:

- 1
  - (a) Mary walks along the bank of the river.
  - (b) Harbor bank is the richest bank in the city.
- 2
  - (a) Drop me a line where you are in Boston.
  - (b) We built a fence along the property line.

Kule mizekelo ingentla, nasiphi na isizathu, amagama aphawulwayo anamasuntswana entsingiselo yeleksikhoni engaphezulu kwenye. Ukuba lamasuntswana entsingiselo abunxulumana ngokwembali okanye ayezenzekela ngoko bhalo magama nokuxuba ngokusetyenziswa kwezanidi mazwi, ngokubanzi iinjongo ezingayelelenanga zokwakha ileksikhoni nokufundisa intsingiselo ngexesha elinye. Olunye ubibi lwentsingiselo-mbini.



Oluza no,- Weinereich, 1964, UPustejovsky uthi, luquka okanye lufaka amasuntswana yentsingiselo yeleksikhoni abonisa isiseko sentsingiselo enye yegama efunyanwa kwindawo ezahlukeneyo.

Njengoko ibonisiwe ngezantsi:

- 6 (a) The bank raises its interest rates yesterday.  
 (b) The store is next to the newly constructed bank.
- 7 (a) Mary painted the window.  
 (b) Mary walked through the door.

Ecaphula ku- Weireich, UPustejovsky, ugqala enjenje, xa ebhekiselela ku -Weinreich, ndiza kubhekisa kumasuntswana antsingiselo zahlukileyo njengentsingiselo ezininzi ezandisiweyo. Nakanjani umfuziselo wentsingiselo yeleksikhali mawube ukucacisa ngegama ibhanki ukuba ubhekiselele entweni phakathi kokumisa nesakhiwo, kwaye kanjani igama "window" ubhekiselele entweni phakathi kokuvula nento ebambekayo, ubume besivisa bungabhekiselela kumiselo lwesenzisa.

Kukho iindidi zamasuntswana andisiweyo: (a) isigaba esigciniweyo, (b) isigaba esiguqulweyo. Kwakhona UPusejovsky, uza kuthi axoxe ngengqiqo enentsingiselo ezininzi ezinje ngolwandiso olumbono-mbini apho kungekho tshintsho ngesigaba seleksikhoni, nophinda-phindo lwamasuntswana entsingiselo yamagama, ayangenana, axhomekeke okanye abelane / ohlulelane ngentsingiselo. Ukususela ngoku intsingiselo ezininzi ezandisiweyo bububanzi obucuthekileyo begama wobuchule bokuqika intsingiselo ezininzi, ukususela oko owokuqala kananjalo uchaza izigaba ezichaseneyo zamasuntswana entsingiselo ukuba anxulumana njani, umzekelo, usebenziso lwehamile lusisibizo ikwasisenzi.

### 2.3.1 Intsingiselo mbini echaseneyo

Ngokuka Pustejovsky, unale ngqwalasela, ukwenza umsebenzi ngokucacileyo ochazwe ngentla, ngokukhawuleza iza kucaca ukuba inkoliso yomsebenzi yenye yazo intsingiselo-mbini echaseneyo, ngokwesiko zithandelawa ngobudlelwane ukuphinda-phinda.



amasuntswana entsingiselo ngegama elinye. Ukongeza, ukuba yenziwe njenge sandiso esintsingiselo ninzi yonke iyakuba sisigaba esichaseneyo nentsingiselo mbini sodwa, ngokuqhelekileyo iphathwa njengamasuntswana antsingiselo-mbini angathethi nto enye. Utyatyadula athi, akukho sizathu sokwenza umahluko wokuqeqisa phakathi kwendidi zembono-mbini. Obu buchule UPustejovsky ububiza njengesuntswana lobalo lweleksikhoni, evela kuqala ukwanelisa ukuphatha umahluko wesuntswana lentsingiselo phakathi kwendidi zentsingiselo-mbini make sijonge ngawaphi lamanqaku / zeziphi iziphumo ezidlalwe kumagama angekho ntsingiselo-mbini, kwinkqubo yamagama eleksikoni enamasuntswana entsingiselo ezichaseneyo. Qwalasela izivakalisi ezimbono-mbini:

11 (a) John shot a few bucks.

Esi sivakalisi singentla sinesenzi u - shoot kunye nesibizo u-buck zombini / omabini lamagama anentsingiselo ezimbini ezichaseneyo kwaye esi sivakalisi sitsho ngokuqinisekileyo ukuba, uJohn uchithe ixesha elininzi ebheja. Lo mzekelo ungentla ubonisa lento ibizwa ngokuba yipregmantiki enyanzelekileyo engekho mbono-mbini, oko kwaqondwa intetha yenziwa kwindawo ethile apho ingu-John kunye nesenzo agaxeleke kuso.

Qaphela le nto, ileksikhali engekho mbono-mbini ayenze yodwa / ngokuzimeleyo kwigama elinye, kodwa ukubangaba kwindawo ekuthethwa kuyo sele ikhethiwe / iqwalaselwe , imbono-mbini yamanye amagama inyanzelekile. Qwalasela lemizekelo ilandelayo embono-mbini, kodwa ayichazi suntswana licuthekileyo kwingqiqo entsingiselo - ninzi.

12. Nadia's plane taxied to the terminal.

Ezi zibizo zibini zimbono-mbini. Apho iplane inamasuntswana amabini. (1) njengenqwelo-moya (2) njengesixhobo somchweli. Isibizo esithi terminal kwanaso sinamasuntswana amabini. (1) itheminal yekhomputha, (2) njenge sakhiwo kwisikhululo moya, kwisitishi sikaloliwe okanye ibhasi. Eyona ndibaniselwano isemqoka kukungabikho kwembono-mbini kwemibuzo ukuba ungafikelela njani kwelona suntsu ngaphakathi kwisivakalisi.

Jonga le mizekelo iku 13 no 14.



13 Ross was escorted from the bar to the dock.

14 (a) The judge asked the defendant to approach the door.

(b) The defendant was in the pub at the bar.

Umzekelo ku-14(a) nangona ijaji kusenokwenzeka ukuba ibe kwindawo yentselo kwaye sibhekiselela emntwini njengomangalelwa kule ndawo, lo nto ithanda ukunika ukufaneleka kokusetyenziswa kwegama.

Eyona nto ibalulekileyo yingcinga elungisa indawo ekuthethwa kuyo ethi inike / ilungiselele ileksikhali ezingekho mbono mbini kwezi zivakalisi ngenxa yokulunga kwentetho ngaphakathi apho isivakalisi sivela khona.

UPustejovsky, uphinda agqale athi, kukho imiba yembono-mbini echaseneyo engafuni ndawo kuthethwa kuyo kunye nolwazi lwe-pregmantiki malunga nokungabikho kwembono-mbini ikakhulu, njengokuba igama elingekho mbono-mbini liza ngokuunga konxulumano lwesivisa kwisivakalisi. Jonga isivakalisi ngezantsi ku-(15), elona suntsu lentsingiselo yesibizo u-club sifika ngenxa yokulunga kothintelo lolwazi lokuveza ibinzana lesibizo kugqwetho lwesimaphambili / lwentloko.

15 a Nadia's favourite club is the five iron.

b Nadia's favourite club is the carlton.

Ngenxa yendlela elona suntsu lentsingiselo lichongiswe kulo mzekelo. UPustejovsky, ubhekisa kolu chongo njengomba wothintelo nyanzelo lwentsingiselo-nye. Esona sidingo sikaPustejovsky, kukuthelekisa ezi ntlobo zembono-mbini nezo zolwandiso olunentsingiselo ezininzi kwaye athile ukuba loluphi olumelo lweleksikhoni lwaneleyo ukuchaza umahluko wamasuntsu.

### 2.3.2 Ulwandiso lwentsingiselo ezininzi

UPustejovsky, ubanga ukuba, iintsingiselo ezininzi ezongeziweyo zibonakala zifuna umahluko wohlobo lonxulumano phakathi kwamasantswana entsingiselo. Izivakalisi ezinikiweyo ziquka izibizo ucango kunye nefestile, umzekelo ziyinxalenye yengqokelela enkulu yotshintsho olubizwa ngokuba yiFigure-ground reversals. Eziquka amahlelo



amaninzi ezibizo kulwimi ezinjengeziko, indawo yokubasa, inqawa, igumbi, isango njalo-njalo. Imbono-mbini kwezi zibizo ziquka amasuntswana amabini entsingiselo nezinto eziphathekayo ezisetyenziswa ukwakha/ukubumba. Eli suntswana lentsingiselo liguquguqukayo lichazwe njenge ntsingiselo ezininzi eziqiquweyo, apho zinamasuntswana entsingiselo enxulumeneyo ezenziwe ngendlela emiselweyo.

Ziquka:

- 16 count / mass alternation, lamb.  
(a) The lamb is running in the fields.  
(b) John ate lamb for breakfast.
- 17 Container / Containee alternation .  
(a) Mary broke the bottle.  
(b) The baby finished the bottle.
- 18 Plant / food alternation, fig, apple.  
(a) Marry ate a fig for lunch.  
(b) Mary watered the fig in the garden.
- 19 Product / produce alternation, newspaper, honda.  
(a) The newspaper fired its editor.  
(b) John spilled coffee on the newspaper.
- 20 Process / result alternation, examination, merger.  
(a) The company's merger with Honda will begin next fall.  
(b) The merger will produce cars.
- 21 Place / people alternation, city, New York.  
(a) John travelled to New York.  
(b) New York kicked the mayor out of office.

Elona suntsu lilungileyo kuqiqo oluntsingiselo.-ninzi luphawulwa kuphela ngokulungisa indawo ekuthethwa kuyo. Eyona nto yahlula amasuntsu kuqiqo olunentsingiselo ezininzi kwimiba yochasaniso yindlela apho amasuntswana entsingiselo anxulumana ngayo. Owona mahluko mkhulu ngowokuba, xa ingcinga yendawo ekuthethwa kuyo kunye

nokelunga kwethetha zinceda kuyo kunye nokulunga kwethetha zinceda amasuntswana antsingiselo nye, echaseneyo.

Omabini lamasuntswana entsingiselo esibizo antsingiselo-ninzi abonakala efanelekile ekutolikeni isibizo kwindawo ekuthethwa kuyo, kodwa isuntswana lentsingiselo elinye libonakala “ligxininisa” kwinjongo zalanto kuthethwa kuyo. Intsingiselo ezininzi ezongeziweyo kwakho zibonakala kwelinye inqanaba. Umzekelo, iziphawuli ezinje ngolungileyo zine ntsingiselo eziphindaphindiweyo, kuxhomekeka kulo nto ziyichazayo.

- 23     a     A good car  
         b     A good meal  
         c     A good knife

Ngolunye uluvo, isiphawuli esilungileyo kuphela siqinisekisa kuvavanyo lwentloko yesibaluli eyichazayo. Ngokungafaniyo kwentsingiselo ezininzi zesibaluli ezingentla, kananjalo akubonakali kukho utshintsho okanye ingqwalasela, kodwa noko umsebenzi uxhomekeke kwintloko echazwayo. Lamasuntswana entsingiselo zesiphawuli abonakala kubhetele ukuwahlula njenge ntsingiselo ezininzi ezongeziweyo kunamasuntswana entsingiselo ezichaseneyo, nangona ingacacanga ukuba yintoni olona-lona nxulumano phakathi kwala masuntswana entsingiselo ngaphaya kwesigqibo esiqinisekileyo. UPustejovsky, ukwathi, intsingiselo ezininzi zengqiqo zibonakala njengonxulumano lophinda-phindo lwegatya lwemfezekiso nendidi ezithi izenzi zizikhethe, njenge zivakalisi ezingezantsi:

- 24     a     Marry began to read the novel.  
         b     Mary began reading the novel.  
         c     Mary began the novel.

Isenzi esinje ngo qala sinentsingiselo ezininzi kuba zingakwazi ukukhetha nokuphinda-phinda amanani obumbo-zivakalisi nesemantiki yendawo ekuthethwa kuyo, ezinje ngebinzana lesenzi okanye ibinzana lesibizo.

Ngokubanzi, isenzi ngokwaso sigcina intsingiselo enye, ibenomahluko omncinci ngokuxhomekeke kudidi lwemfezekiso olukhethileyo. Nangona, ingathanda ukubonakala ngokuvakalayo umzekelo wengqiqo zentsingiselo ezininzi. Amanye amasuntswana



entsingiselo abuyelelana ngenkangeleko yentsingiselo ezininzi sithathe ezantsi kwindawo yenguqu zezenzi ezichazwe ngokubanzi., ezinje ngenguqu ezisandulukuqala / inguqu zesenzeko: Jonga apha ngezantsi ku-25 kunye no-26:

- 25 (a) The bottle broke.  
(b) John broke the bottle.
- 26 (a) The window opened suddenly.  
(b) Mary opened the window suddenly

Zahlukile kwintsingiselo mbini echaseneyo ebimelwe kwicandelo elingaphambili amatyeli amaninzi. Ayingalamasuntswana anxulumeneyo kuphela achazwe ngendlela eyiyo kodwa angangaphikisani kakuhle ukuba elinye isuntswana lentsingiselo eliku 25 (a) kunye no-26 (a) Ifunwa lelinye isuntswana lentsingiselo ngokwenene. Ngoko ke, ukuthi tyaba kwenguqulelo zezenzi ezinje ngezi zibonakalayo ikwazezi ngqiqo zentsingiselo ezininzi.

## 2.4 ISIQALO SENGCHINGANE YESEMANTIKI YELEKSIKHONI

UPustejovsky, ucacisa ngokulula ngomfuziselo womiselo lweleksikhoni efanelekileyo, kunye noqikelelo olubanzi lobalo kunye nasendaweni yolwimi. Njengoko ibichaziwe ngaphambili, uhlobo apho ileksikhoni ithi ithathe impembelelo ummiselo kunye nolwakhiwo lwegramma iyonke. Ngokuka-Pustejovsky, indawo enkulu yophando lwentsingiselo kude kube kutsha nje ikuhlobo lokuqika kunye ukusuka nomelo lobumbo lwezivakalisi ezilinganayo ukuya kumelo loqiqo lwelwimi.

Ukususela ngoku, ayothusi into yokuba izinto ezininzi ngokubhekiselele kwintsingiselo yeleksikhoni zisekelwe kwimifuziselo ukusuka ku-10 – 20 yeminyaka ubudala. Ngokuka Pustejovsky, uthi, makhe sibeke elubala ingxaki ukuze sikwazi ukumela isiqalo somfuziselo ngokucacileyo.

Eqikelela ukuba, oyena ndoqo wengxaki yentsingiselo zolwimi lwendalo yilento yokunika umelo lwentsingiselo elungileyo nakuluphi na ulawulo lolwimi kwilwimi. Ngethemba lokuba uzobo phakathi kwentlobo zamagama kunye neentlobo zentsingiselo lungaqhubeka ngokucacisiweyo kunye nenkqubo yomiselo.



Eyona ndlela ithe ngqo yokucacisa iintsingiselo ezichaziweyo kwicandelo elidlulileyo kukuvumela ileksikhoni ibenoluhlu lwamagama oluphinda - phindiweyo, inkcazelo nganye inentsingiselo eyahlukileyo okanye isuntswana lentsingiselo yeleksikhoni, yeyona ndlela iqinisekileyo yokuchaza iyantlukwano yesuntswana lentsingiselo isimo seleksikhoni kwaye ngapha koko ineziphumo ezincinane kwindalo yemisebenzi yesemantiki kwigrama. Kwaye esisichazi magama sibizwa ngokuba lubalo lwesuntsu lweleksikhoni (sel) kwaye siyicacisa ngqo njengoku kulandelayo: Ileksikhoni (I) luluhlu lwesuntswana lentsingiselo yobalo lweleksikhoni ukuba qha kukho lonke igama w ku L linamasuntswana eentsingiselo ephinda-phindiweyo, S.....Sn ezinxulumaniswa nelo gama, kwaye ngelo xesha ufakelo lweleksikhon ezicacisa la masuntswana entsingiselo agcinwe. njengo {ws, .....,ws }

UPustejovsky ubanga athi, enyanisweni isimo segama elintsingiselo ezimbini alibonakali lihlangabezana okanye ligqibelele nenkqubo yolwakhiwo yokuba amagama adibana njani kutoliko lwesivakalisi. Umzekelo, wamasuntswana mabini entsingiselo echaseneyo yegama. Bank, njengoko lisetyenziswe ngaphambili lingadweliswa ngokwefashoni njengaku-27 kunye no 26 ngezantsi, ngokusebenzisa umgangatho ofanelekileyo wolwakhiwo lohlobo. Lwesigaba (cat) nencukacha zesiseko zolu hlobo

27 Bank 1

Isigaba isibizo sobalo

Uhlobo indawo yocino mali

28 Bank 2

Isigaba isibizo sobalo

Uhlobo unxweme

Nqokubhekiselele ku- Hirst, 1987, UPustejovsky uvela nesisingxengxexezo sokuba, iimfuno zokhetho lwezenzi zichazwe njenge ngqokelela yophawu olunye njengentlobo zamagama ngokwawo, ngelixesha intsingiselo – enye ingabonakala kuphela kwinkqubo yokulungisa ukufana kwempawu zomsebenzi ne-adyumenti ezikhoyo zokungenisa ileksikhoni. Umzekelo isenzi esinjengo – lend (boleka) singakhethwa kumanye amasuntswana entsingiselo (ngokuba iingamasuntswana entsingiselo amaninzi ngokwe (SEL) ngoko indawo yokugcina imali njenge ntloko, njengokuba iboniswe ngezantsi.

29 The bank will lend the money to the customer.

Lend,



Isigaba	isenzi
Isemantiki	Ro ( $O_1, O_2, O_3$ )
	Arg1 = NP Ocandelo lemali
Ulwakhiwo lwe adyument	Arg 2 = NP Imali
	Arg 3 = NP Umntu

Ngokuka Pustejovsky, lona nguwana mfuziselo ofanelekileyo womiselo lweleksikhoni, ukususela oko, ukuba nje ulwakhiwo kunye nemfuneko zesemantiki ziyaneliseka, akukho sizathu sokutshintsha okanye wandise ulwakhiwo lwezinto ezisebenzayo ukuze ukwazi ukusebenzisa ulwazi lweleksikhoni kwakhona indlela efanayo isetyenziswe kwizenzi ezizakuthi zivumelane.

Noguqu-guquko kwisandiso esikhethwe ukuba simele amasuntswana entsingiselo awohlukeneyo, ngokunxulumene nolwabiwo lophawu lweleksikhoni ngokwayo. Obu buchule bufunyenwe kwindlela zobume bolwimi, kwezinye ifashoni okanye kwenye. Kwakhona le ndlela ithatha njenge nyaniso into nganye yeleksikhoni ikhethwa ngokukodwa ubume bemeko yendawo ethile yobumbo-zivakalisi, njengoko ibonakaliswe ngezantsi kwesenzi u-qala (begin). Isemantiki yohlobo ngalunye, olubonakaliswe ngezantsi njengonxulumano  $R_1 (O_1, O_2)$ , zinganxulunyaniswa kwenye ngokungafunwa komthetho weleksikhoni okanye ngokubanga intsingiselo.

Begin	
Isigaba	Sisenzi
Isemantiki	R1 ( $O_1, O_2$ )
	Arg 1 = NP
Argstr	Arg 2 = NP (+ inf)
Begin 2	
Isigaba	Sisenzi
Semantiki	R3 ( $O_1, O_2$ )
Argstr	Arg 1 = NP
	Arg 2 = NP (+ Prog)
Begin 3	
Isigaba	Sisenzi
Semantiki	R3, ( $O_1, O_2$ )

Argstr                      Arg 1 = NP  
                                  Arg 2 = NP

Ngoku uPustejovsky, uzama ukuphicotha imiba yezibizo ezinentsingiselo ezininzi esele, zixoxiwe ngasentla ngokwamasuntswana eentsingiselo zobalo lomelo lweleksikhoni. Ziquka i-figure / ground reversali, container / containee alternations, and count / mass alternations ziphindwe ngezantsi.

- 38     a     The lamb is running in the field.  
        b     John ate the lamb for breakfast.
- 39     a     Mary broke the bottle.  
        b     The boy finished the bottle.
- 40     a     The window is rotting.  
        b     Mary crawled through the window.

Le mizekelo ingentla ithe yaphathwa njengamasuntswana obalo ngethuba lentsingiselo mbini-echaseneyo. Jonga imizekelo yamasuntswana esibizo esandisiwayo

Lamb

Lamb1

Isigaba                      Isibizo sobalo

Genus                      Isilwanyana

Lamb 2

Isigaba                      isibizo                      Sobukhulu

Genus                      Inyama

Kwesi sahluko uPustejovsky umisela umba wesuntsu lobalo lweleksikhoni ukwenzela inkcazelo yolwimi lwendalo lwesemantiki.

UPustejovsky, 1991, ugqala athi, ibalulekikle into yokuqaphela ukuba intsingiselo yethiyori yesemantiki izakuthi ichaphazele ngokubanzi ulwakhiwo lwethiyori yesemantiki ngeendlela ezininzi.



Ithetha ukuthi, inkcazelo yolwimi lwendalo olumelwe lisuntsu lobalo lweleksikhoni ayanelanga. Kwakhona uPustejovsky, uthi, inqaku lethiyori yesemantiki njengoko ikwazi ngokuphindeneyo ukwaba iintsingiselo kwintetha, kubalo lwe-fenomena enjenge, isithetha-ntonje, isichasi, igama elinentsingiselo ezininzi, imethonimi, emva koko indibaniselwano iza kuxhomekeka ekugqibeleni ekubeni yintoni isiseko izigaba zeleksikhoni zolwimi eziyichazayo. Njengoko exoxa uPustejovsky, 1991, uthi, ukuba bayitshintshile indlela apho izigaba zinokuthi zibonakale, ngelo xesha inkangeleko yendibaniselwano yona ubuqu izakutshintsha. Ngoku isemantiki yeleksikhoni ebunyanini ithi isinyanzele ukuba siphinde sivavanye eyona ndalo yendibaniselwano yesemantiki. Kukho iziseko ezithathu ze-adyumenti ezibonisa ukungoneliseki kwesuntsu lobalo lweleksikhoni ukwenzela inkcazelo yolwimi.

(2) Ulwakhiwo losetyenziso lwamagama:

Amagama athi aqikelele amasuntswana amatsha kwindawo entsha ekuthethwa kuyo.

(3) Ukungenwa lula kwamasuntswana amagama:

Amasuntswana amagama ayingomasuntsu enkcaza kodwa ayangenana ukwenza uthlekiso kanye amasuntswana amagama

(4) Inkcaza / itnetho yobumbo sivakalisi sinenkangeleko ezinzi:

Isuntsu elinye legama lingabunjwa kaninzi.

Eziziseko zingasentla ze-adyumenti, inye ikhomba ukungabinamandla kwemifunziso yamasuntsu obalo ekucaciseni ngokupheleleyo indalo yolwazi lweleksikhoni kunye nentsingiselo ezininzi.

UPustejovsky, (1991), ugqala enjenge, nangona isivumelwano somiselo lweleksikhoni lwanele malunga nembono-mbini echaseneyo, ayikwazi ukumisela eyona ndalo yentsingiselo ezininzi. Ukubambisana kakuhle kolwandiso lwentsingiselo ezininzi uPustejovsky ukhathalele intsingiselo yegama kunye nendibaniselwano.



### 2.4.1 Amanqaku ethiyori yesemantiki yeleksikhoni

Ejonga kumanqaku ethiyori yesemantiki yeleksikhoni, uPustejovsky ugqala / ubeka elubala amanqaku amabini: Indlela emiselweyo mayifundeke. Yindlela ecacileyo kwaye neentlobo ezineenkukacha ezininzi kufuneka zimiselwe ngokwaneleyo. Ithetha ukuthi umahluko phakathi kwenqaku lethiyorethikhali linguwistiki kunye nodibaniselwano lwelinguwistiki kufuneka ziqwalasele umsebenzi wezixhobo zodibaniselwano kunye neenkcazelo njenge zinto ithiyori yelinguwistiki.

UPustejovsky ukholelwa ekubeni ingqokelela yedata sele inabe kakhulu ukuquka ikhopora, kulo mba uPustejovsky makanonophele nantoni na isinxulumaniso esiyivezayo kwikhopora. Icapula okanye ibhekiselela ku-chomsky (1955, 1957). UPustejovsky uthetha enjenje, isigxeko sika chomsky sinje siyanxulumana kule-mihla njengoko kwakunjalo ngo-1950, kwakhona ebhekiselela ku-chomsky, 1964, uPustejovsky uxoxa enjenje, ubusemantiki bubhekiselela kwisemantiki eyakhekileyo yentetha kwigrama. Ngoku uPustejovsky uza nombuzo wokuba iza kubanjani inkcaza yobusemantiki ukuba ngokucacileyo ayinazimvo zimbini nokuba intetha isebenza ngokunyanisileyo okanye hayi. Ngoku qwalasela indlela apho iilwimi zivakaliswa khona kwaye lento ikuchaphazela njani ukwamkeleka kwentetha.

- 1
  - (a) Mary kicked me with her foot.
  - (b) Mary kicked me with her left foot.
- 2
  - (a) John buttered the toast with butter.
  - (b) John buttered the toast with expensive butter from wisconsin.

Ngokwale mizekelo ingentla (a) izivakalisi eziku (a) asikuba azinabugrama nakobuphi na ubungqongqo besuntsu. Zamkeleke kancinci ngokwesemantiki kunezivakalisi eziku-b. Qwalasela ezi zivakalisi ku-3b kunye 3c azingqinelani ngokwesemantiki kuba into enxulunyaniswa nezibizo ezinokuthi zenzeke kwisemantiki ezinjenge sichazi magama kunye nelitye

- 3
  - a Mary began the book.
  - b John began the dictionary.
  - c Mary began the rock.



UPustejovsky ucacisa ezi zivakalisi zingentla ngolu-hlobo, ezi zivakalisi ziyohluka ngokwe semantiki nangendlela zokubaluleka. Isivakalisi ku-3(a) samkela utoliko olubini, senza lento nomnye umntu ayenzayo encwadini njengombhali, ubhalo. Kwaye zininzi iindlela zokuqala incwadi isivakalisi u-3(b) utolikeka kaninzi ngokubhekiselele kwizenzeko ezinxulumene nolwakhiwo lwesi sichazi magama, ngoko ayisaphumelelanga ukuvumela utoliko oluku-3(a), olo fundo lwesi chazi magama. Isizathu sokuba ibe ayitolikwanga njengaku-3(a), sesi sokuba isichazi magama luhlobo lwembaliso kwaye isebenza kwindawo eyahlukileyo. Alukho utoliko luka-3(c) njengoko kungekho nto inokwenziwa ngamatye.

Ebhekiselela ku-Grimshaw kunye no-Vikner (1993), uPustejovsky, 1991, uvela nemizekelo ebonisa ubusemantikhali kwaye ibonisa ngambini.

- 4
  - a The house was built.
  - b The house was built by accomplished builders.
- 5
  - a The cookies were baked.
  - b The cookies were baked in the oven.

#### 2.4.2 Ulwakhiwo losetyenziso lwamagama

Ingxoxo ingolwakhiwo losetyenziso lwamagama lo nto ithetha ukuthi amagama aqikelela amasuntswana amatsha kwindawo entsha. Umbuzo ngulo ingaba isuntsu lobalo lweleksikhoni lenze kakuhle ukuphanda ngosetyenziso lwamagama kwindawo entsha?

UPustejovsky ugqala enjenje, i-adyumenti yokuqala ukuchasana nomfuziselo wesuntsu lobalo lunxulumene nolwakhiwo losetyenziso lwamagama, olu, amagama angazithatha kanjani iintsingiselo ezininzi kwindawo entsha.

Nxulumanisa le mbono-mbini yeziphawuli ezinjengo – good

- 6
  - a Mary finally bought a good umbrella.
  - b After two weeks on the road, John was looking for a good meal.
  - c John is a good teacher.

Le ntetha ithetha ukuthi, ngaphakathi apha kwisuntsu lobalo lweleksikhoni, eyona ndlela yokumela umahluko wamasuntswana eziphawuli ezinjengo good kakufuna ukuba udwelisa / ubenoluhlu lwamasuntswana afunyanwa, kusetyenziso lwamagama: Good 1, Good 2, Good 3. Lo ndlela izakuthi ingqinelane nalamasuntswana mathathu adweliswe ngezantsi.

Good1	to function well
Good2	to perform some act well
Good3	tasty

UPustejovsky utyatyadula exoxa ngelithi, iimeko ezithi zenze i-ambrella “ibe-good for something”, kwaye yahluke kakhulu kwezo zenza uJohn elungileyo.

Ebhakiselela ku-Katz (1964) kunye no-Vendler 1967, UPustejovsky ugqala enjenje, “goodness” uchazwa ngokunxulumene namaqondo kwaye lamaqondo ayohluka ngokwesibizo sesiphawuli ekubhekiswa kuso. Into engafuni nokuba kwenziwe uphando ukufumana isibekelelo sembalo sesiphawuli ezingakhange zichatshazelwe kubalo ngasentla. Nxulumanisa lemizekelo. Good weather, good movie, kunye no-good children, kusetyenziso olutsha ngalunye. Isuntsu lobalo leleksikhoni kufuneka lingenise ileksikhali entsha kwisichazi magama ukwakha ungeniso olunye lwesuntsu elitsha ngalinye.

Omnye umzekelo wendawo ezimeleyo yolwakhiwo losetyenziso lwamagama luboniswe ngokucacileyo neziphawuli ezinjengo-fast kunye no-slow apho intsingiselo yesivisa yahlukayo kuxhomekeke kwintloko echaziweyo. Njengoko ichaziwe ngasentla ukuba umfuziselo wesuntsu lobalo leleksikhoni lifuna ubalo lwamasuntsu elahlukileyo lala magama ukuze lubale imbono-mbini eboniswe ngezantsi.

- 7        The island authorities sent out a fast little government boat. The culpeper, to welcom us: A boat driven quickly or a boat that is inheritantly fast.
- 8        A fast typist:  
A person who perform the act of typing quickly.
- 9        Rockets is a fast game:  
The motions involves in the game are rapid and swift.
- 10       A fast book:



One that can read in a short time.

- 11 My friend is a fast driver and a constant worry to her cautious husband:  
One who drives quickly.
- 12 You may decide that a man will be able to make the fast difficult decisions:  
Process which takes a short amount of time  
There are the senses for fast as that or good which have been discussed previously.

Kukho amasuntswana ka-fast njengala ka-good asele exoxiwe ngaphambili.

- Fast1 to move quickly  
Fast2 to perform some act quickly  
Fast3 to do something that takes little time

Ngokuka Pustesjovsky kunye no-Boguraeu, 1993, bathetha benjenje; ukwenzela ileksikhoni enyanisekileyo, amasuntswana amagama azakuchazwa ngokokhetho olunyiniweyo. Umzekelo, fast (1) uzakuxelwa yilo nto ibhekiselele kwihlelo lento ehambayo, kwaye u-fast (2) uzakwaziwa ngokupheleleyo ukuba unxulumana njani nesehlo esithatha ithutyana lokufunda, kwimeko ka-10 ngasentla kwinjongosenzi echaziweyo. Qaphela kufuphi uphicotho, isenzeko ngasinye sika-fast sixela umahluko omncinci / indlela ezahluka kancinci ngayo. UPustejovsky kwakhona uyibeka icace, into yokuba, isiphelo sobalo samasuntswana egama akanakukwazi ukubala / ukusetyenziswa kulwakhiwo lobekelela / lwendawo yosetyenziso lwesisiphawuli kulwimi. Ukubonisa le nto, nxulumanisa amabinzana The fastest motoway kunye ne-fast garage njengoko isetyenzisiwe ku-13 ngezantsi

- 13 a The autobahn is the fastest motorway in Germany.  
b I need a fast garage for my car, since we leave on Sunday.

Apha isiphawuli u-fast kwesi sivakalisi siku 13 a, sibhekisele kwisuntsu elitsha, fast 4 ngamandla emoto endleleni igcina isantya esiphezulu omnye umzekelo ono-fast.

- 14 The fastest road to school this time of day would be Lexington street.

Ngokuka Pustejovsky, le nto / esi sivakalisi siquka isuntsu elistsha fast 4 no-fast 3 njengoko zinikiwe / zichaziwe ngentla, utsho ukuthi kubhekiselelwa kwindlela ku-14 ikwanjalo ukubhekisela kwindlela ephumela kwinqaku lombekwa phambili kwibinzana lesibizo:

Le ivumela utoliko lwexeshana lwesiphawuli u-fast, ithetha ukuhamba ngokhawuleza. Kwaye nokungabinako kwesuntsu lobalo leleksikhoni ukufezekisa ubalo lwamasuntswana lweleksikali ethile ayisikelwa mida kule mizekelo igentla / kulwakhiwo nangayiphi na indlela.

Umzekelo kukho u-want:

- 15     a        Mary wants another cigarette.  
          b        Bill wants a beer.  
          c        Mary wants a job.

Ngokuka Pustejovsky, uba inqaku lethiyori yesemantiki kufuna ukujonga ulwakheko lwentetho, ngoko ke singaluchaza kanjani utolikeko oluku-15. Inqatolikwa ngoluhlobo, cacileyo kukho indawo ezahlukeneyo emdlalweni ezine senzi esinjengo- want esiku-15 a ithetha ukuthi “want to smoke” ku-15 b, ithetha ukuthi – want to drink kunye no-15c ezinje ngokuqikelela utoliko “want to have” jikelele. Kwakhona uPustejovsky uthetha enjenje, kubalo lwesuntsu lweleksikhoni ukuze sikwazi ukuthimba usetyenziso ngalunye luka- want kungenziwa ngokuthi kubhekiselelwe kubunjani bolonxulumano ulufunayo.

- 17     a        Want1        to want to smoke.  
          b        Want2        to want to drink.  
          c        Want3        to want to have.

Kwakhona uPustejovsky, uthi ubalo alukwazi kwenza luhlu lupheleleyo lwamasuntswana apho ezi zenzi zinokukwazi ukuqikelela / ukusetyenziswa kwindawo entsha.

Ubunzima apha besemantiki kunye nobe ndibaniselwana bobu amasuntsu amagama obalo akakwazi ukuchaza zonke iintsingiselo ezinokwenzeka zeleksikhali kwileksikhoni, ngoku isemantiki yeleksikhoni kufuneka ikwazi ukucacisa ulwakhiwo losetyenziso lwamagama kwindawo ezahlukeneyo, ngaphandle kokuvumela utoliko olungapheliyo.



Kwaye ukuba isuntsu lobalo leleksikhoni kukucacisa ulwandiso lwesuntsu kwakunye nolwakhiwo losetyenziso magama, kwakufuneka ibenobugrama yesixolelwano yokuvuselela amasuntswana amatsha azayo kwaye esi sixokelelwano kufuneka ibebuthathaka ukuvelisa ngokwaneleyo amasuntswana amatsha la anobusemantiki obufanelekileyo bendawo ethile, mayingabikho nenye imveliso. Kufuneka iimvelisi ezininzi njengokuba kukho amasuntswana emvelaphi okuba senza njani isiphawuli ukuze sise-tyenziswe kwisibizo, kwingxoxo engasentla le nto ithetha ukuthi inani elingenakubalwa lale mveliso liza kufuneka linikwe uluhlu lwama gama emayiwasebenzise.

### 2.4.3 Ungeno lula lwamasuntswana amagama

Ngokuka-Pustejovsky, i-adyumentu yokuqala echasene nemifiziselo yamasuntswana obalo ibonise ukungafezeki kwengxaki yesuntsu kwaye ukungaphumezeli okwesibini kwe-sel kunxulumene nengxaki yamasuntswana asengxakini: njengoko i-adyumentu yemibutho eyahlukeneyo yeleksikhoni isekelwe kwimbangi, ethi yahlule amasuntswana amagama kuphicotho olukhawuleze ngaphezulu lulukhuni kakhulu, enokuba isuntsu lobalo belanele njengecebo lenkcazelo, isoloko injalo lingakhethwa njani isuntsu elilungileyo legama nakwiyiphi na indawo eliyinikiweyo. Ngokubhekiselele ku-Atkins (1988) uPustejovsky unxulumanisa imbono-mbini yezenzi ezinjengo-bake ezifuna ukukhethwa ngokuphathelele kutshintsho lobume luphikisana nofundo lwendalo / ufundo lolwakhiwo kuxhomekeka kwindawo ekuthethwa kuyo u-a uphikisana no-b.

- 18     a        John baked the potatoes.  
          b        Mary baked a cake (creation).

Kulo mzekelo ungentla into eboniswayo yile yokuba isuntsu elinye liyakwazi ukuquka elinye.

Gcina lemizekelo ilandelayo ingezantsi:

- 19     a        Mary cooked the meal.  
          b        Mary cooked the carrots.
- 20     a        John fried an omelet.  
          b        John fried an egg.



Zozibini izivakalisi eziku- (19 (a) kunye no-20 (a), injongosenzi ithi ibekho ngenxa yamandla enkqubo yokupheka kunye neyokugcada ngokulinganayo, kwaye akukho mahluko kwisenzeko esinoxanduva sokutya okutyekayo iziphumo ku- 19(b) kunye, no-20(b). UPustejovsky ugqala enjenje, kukho ugqithiso oluninzi kundoqo wamalungu esemantiki kwizifundo ezahlukeneyo kwaye ayikwazi ukwenzeka kwisiqinisekiso sokhetho lwesuntsu legama kwiziseko zominyo lokhetho kuphela. Enye ingxaki kukunqongophala komgangatho wezicatshulwa zendalo. Ngokubhekisezele ku-Herskouits (1987 – 88), uPustejovsky uthetha enjenje, xa emisela umba weleksikhali embono-mbini yesithuba semibekwa-phambili, ivera owona mbono wentsingiselo zeleksikhali ezithi zinike oyena ndoqo wesemantiki yegama.

Ngokubhekiselele ku-Atkins 1991, uPustejovsky, uceba enjenje, kundoqo wentsingiselo ka-in ibhunga lizakufuna unxulumano kodwa ukwahlulwa kwamasuntswana ezincedisi ezinjengezi sele zisetyenzisiwe kwezi ntetho zimbini “The hole in the wall kunye ne crack in the bowl”.

Le mizekezo ingentla ibonisa inxalenye yongenwano lukandoqo kunye namalungu epherisferal amagama antsingiselo yahlukeneyo. Ingcinga zemveli zamasuntswana amagama anje-ngazalisekiswa kwisichazi magama sangoku, akenelanga.

Kwisiseko sombutho somgca wobalo wongeniso lwezichazi magama. Esona sisombululo kule nto kukuba kusetyenziswe isichazi magama ezicokisiweyo kwisemantiki yendawo ekuthethwa kuyo yesifezekisi kuboniswe nominyo lokhetho.

Enye yengxaki kukungabinamandla ukuchaza ngokwaneleyo ingqiqo yonxulumano phakathi kwamasuntswana kumba wentsingiselo ezininzi, umzekelo, uguqulo lwesuntsu luquka izibizo ezinjengo-window kunye no-door.

## 21 Window 1

Isigaba	Isibizo sabalo
Uhlobo	Imbobo

## 22 Window 2

Isigaba	Isibizo sobalo
Uhlobo	Into ephathekayo



Ingxaki yale mizekelo ingentla yile yokuba ingqiqo yonxulumano olukhoyo phakathi intetha ayichazwa kwaye amasuntswana aqulathwe kusetyenziso lwegama njengaku-23 ngezantsi:

23 John crawled through the broken window.

Esi sivakalisi siphembelela imizekelo eku-(21) kunye naku- (22).

Omnye umzekelo ngokubhekiselele ku-Osler kunye no-Atkins, (1991, 1992). UPustejovsky uceba enjenje, umba wesuntsu longenwano luquka iziphawu ezinezifizekisi zama suntswana kulwakheko lwendawo. Kwaye ezi zizivisa ezisengqondweni esele zixoxiwe ezinamandla okubonisa uthintsho lohlobo cingisisa isiphawuli esinjengo. Sad kunye no-happy ziyakwazi ukuxela umntu 24 (a) kunye no-24 (b) kananjalo isiganeko esicacisa izibizo ku-24 (c)

- 24     a     The woman is sad  
          b     A sad woman  
          c     A sad day / event/ occasion

Ukucacisa leimizekelo ingentla, uPustejovsky uceba athi, kukho izinto ezimbini izithi zibonise iziphawuli ezintsingiselo-ninzi, okokuqala kuqikelela ukuba ezi ziphawuli zikhetha iinjongosenzi eziphawulayo ngoku yintoni ebangela ukuchazwa kohlobo olungakhethwanga olunje ngethutyana.

27        Sad1

Isigaba

Adyumenthi

28        Sad 2

Isigaba

Adyumenthi

Ngokuka-Pustejovsky, ngaphakathi kumgangatho wesemantiki yeleksikhali, ezi ndawo kuthethwa ngazo zingacebisa amasuntswana amabini ahlukeneyo esiphawuli ngasinye, uhlobo lokuqala lubizwa ngokuba sisivisa senjongosenzi yento ephilayo, kwaye olunye uhlobo lubizwa ngokuba sisivisa sethutyana.

Ekucaciseni “imini embi” “sad day” ikwatolikwa ngokunxulumene nomntu obona iziganeko zethuyana njengezimbi, kwaye ingakumbi ngokwasendalweni, kunxulumano lwesenzisa. Kwakhona uPustejovsky uxoxa enjenje. Okokugqibela, olunye uhlobo olunxulumene nesiphawuli esintsingiselo-ninzi luquka izichazi ezinjenge “noisy” “ngxolo” ezisisivisa somntu okanye londawo lungxolwa kuyo.

29	a	A	noisy1	Car
	b	A	noisy1	boy
	c	A	noisy2	room
	d	A	noisy2	cafeteria

Ubhalo lwenkcazelo yesichazi magama izakufuna oku kwamasuntswana amabini esiphawuli u “noisy” ingxolo: (30) injongosenzi yokwenza ingxolo kunye no (31) indawo ekhatshwa yingxolo

#### Noisy1

Isigaba Isiphawuli

I-adyumenti Engaphathekayo

#### Noisy2

Isigaba Isiphawuli

I-adyumenti Indawo

Olu melo alwenzi nceba / bulungisa kwintsingisezo yesiphawuli. Kaloku asingomasuntswana anganxulumananga, kwane ndawo kukho into eyazekayo “abenzi bengxolo” into ethetha ukuthi nesifundo sokuqala siye senziwa nakanjani ukuba sibekho ngokohlobo lwesichazi esingathanga ngqo.

#### 2.4.4 Umahluko weendlela zokubumba izivakalisi

UPustejovsky uceba ngelithi, iyahluka into yokudala umahluko phakathi kwamasuntswana amagama eleksikhali ngoba ingathabatha inxaxheba / igalelo ekuqondeni umahluko kwaye nakanjalo yiyona ndlela ilula ivulekileyo kudibaniselwano lweleksikhoni ethi iqikelele isisombululo ngesenzi believe kunye no-forget. Impumelelo yezivakalisi eziku (32) – (36) zibonisa ukuba uqondakalo lobumbo-zivakalisi lwezifizekisi zezezi zibonisa ukuba izincedisi ezi zitolikeka kanjani ngokwesemantiki. Ngokubhekiselele ku-Kiparsky kunye



no-Kiparsky, (1971), uPustejovsky uxoxa enjenje, isifezekisi esiya tenses s ku-(32) singqina uphawu olubizwa ngokuba “yi-factivity” apho isifezekisi sesincedisi siqikelelwa ngoba yinyani nokuba intsingiselo yemifuzisezo yesivakalisi ngasinye sithwele ntoni na.

Isivakalisi u-(35), Isifezekisi ukubizwa ngokuba ibinzana lingenziwa libengamabinzana njengo mbuzo kucatshulweku (Baker, 1969 etal.). Nantsi imizekelo ecacisa lento ingentla.

32 Madison avenue is apt to forget that most folk are not members of the leisure class (factive).

33 But like many others who have made the same choice, he forgot to factor one thing into his plan. Caliphonia (Non-factive).

34 As for being a state run by liberal environment loonies, lets not forget where Ronald reagan came from (embedded question).

35 What about friends who forget the passwords or never got it? (Concealed question).

36 He leave forgot his umbrella, and comes back to get is (ellipsed non-factive).

UPustejovsky uvelisa olona phawu lulungileyo oluzakuthi lubonise umahluko phakathi kolu-bumbo-zivakalisi.

37 Forget1

Isigaba	Isenzi
Isemantiki	R2 (O1, O2) (-factive)
I-adyumenthi	Adyum1 = ibinza lesibzo
	Adyum2 = ibinza-lezenzi (+ inf)

Forget 2

Isigaba	Isenzi
Isemantiki	R2 (O1, O2) (+factive)
I-adyumenthi	Adyum1 = ibinza lesibizo
	Adyum2 = isivakalisi (+ ens)

Forget3

Isigaba	Isenzi
Isemantiki	R3 (O1, O2)
I-adyumenthi	Adyum1 = ibinza lesibizo
	Adyum2 = ibinza lesenzi

Njengoko sele ixoxiwe ku-Pustejovsky kunye no=Boguran (1993), baxoxe benjenje, ubuthathaka benyaniso buzakuchaphazela, umzekelo, utoliko ngokombuzo – nempendulo

xa ubuzwa ingaba uMary ulutshixile ucango kuxhomekeke ekubeni u-Mary ukulibela ukuthsixa ucango (non-factive) impendulo izakuba ngu-ewe okanye hayi. Lo mahluko unokubalwa ngokulula ngokuthi uthumela amasuntswana amagama ahlukeneyo kuhlobo ngalunye lobumbo-sivakalisi, kodwa lento ilibala unxulumano phakathi kwemizekelo emibini ka-libala “forget”. Omnye umzekelo obonisa ngokucacileyo izigabana eziliqela ezinxulunyaniswe nentsingiselo yemvelaphi sisenzi ukhumbula “remember”.

40 John probably won't remember that he already fed the dog (factive).

41 The neighbor remember to feed the dog (factive).

UPustejovsky, ugqala enjenje, isivisa u-regret uthatha isivakalisi kunye nesifezekisi sebinza lesibizo, apho zitolikwe ngokunyanisekileyo njengaku-48 ngezantsi:

48 a Mary regret that she has published the article in illustrated semantics.

b Mary regretted the article in illustrated semantics.

c John regretted the photos in the magazine.

Omnye umzekelo onomdla oquka uninzi lwezivumelanisi eziyintloko nesenzi kunye nezenzi ezinezimamva. Qwalasela le mizekelo ingezantsi:

50 a John killed Mary.

b The gun killed Mary.

c The war killed Mary.

d John's pulling the trigger killed Mary.

Le mizekelo ingentla ibonisa l-adyumentu yobumbo lwesivakalisi kwizenzi ayisoloko inengqiqo efanayo ye-adyumentu kunxulumano lwesemantiki. Ngokubhekiselele ku-Lakoff kunye no-Johnson, 1982, Nurberg, 1978, UPustejovsky ugqala enjenje, kukho uhlobo oluthile olunomdla kutshintsho lwentsingiselo apho uPustejovsky azakuzama ukuluchaza apha ngezantsi njengengqiqo yemethonimi. Okokugqibela uPustejovsky, ubhekiselela ku-Levin, 1993 kunye no-Dowty, 1991.

Ugqala enjenje, ezinye izenzi ezitshintshwayo ziquka utoliko lwentloko yesixando sokwenzana ku-(51c) kunye naku (52c) njengesivakalisi ku-(54) esibonisa ukunyazeleka



kotoliko lwesixando sokwenzana kwizenzi ezishukumayo kufuneka zifune isivumelanisi sentloko kunye nenjongosenzi eshukumayo.

- 51    a     John met Mary.  
      b     John met with Mary.  
      c     John and Mary met.
- 52    a     John debated Mary.  
      b     John debated with Mary.  
      c     John and Mary debated.
- 53    a     A car ran into a truck.  
      b     A car and truck ran into each other.
- 54    a     A car ran into a tree.  
      b     A car and a tree ran into each other.

Le mizekelo ingentla ibonisa ufuzo olungenamandla lwesuntsu lobalo leleksikoni ukufumana unxulumaniso phakathi kwamasuntswana ngaphandle kwesongezelelo kobuchule obunamandla kakhulu, njengobango lwentsingiselo. Kwaye into eboniweyo kule adyumentu izimeleyo ngasentla, ngumbono othi umfuziselo wesuntsu wobalo lenkcaza yeleksikhoni ayanelanga nje kwaphela ekuchazeni iintethwana zolwimi lwesemantiki.

#### 2.4.5 Ingcaciso yesemantiki

Ngokubhekiselele ku-Strachey, 1967, uPustejovsky uxoxa enjenje, ingcaciso yesemantiki, ichazwa njengonxulumano lolwimi olungenankcukacha zininzi. Kwakhona ebhekiselela ku-Montague, 1974, and etal, uPustejovsky uqwalase enjenje, unxulumaniso olungenankcukacha zininzi, lulwimi apho ileksikhali kunye namabinzana antsokothileyo anikwa uhlobo olunye kunye nemboniso ebonakalisa ukuba lonke igama linentsingiselo yalo engangxengwanga. Uqhubekeka ithi, ileksikhali ezimbono-mbini zithi ziphathwe ngokuthi kwenziwe uluhlu oluninzi lwamagama, imbono-mbini echaseneyo kunye noqiqo oluntsingiselo ninzi. Kulo mfuziselo ka-Montague, 1974, uPustejovsky ugqala enjenje, uphatho lweleksikhoni njengamasuntswana oluhlu lobalo lwamagama sele kudala



yonganyelwe kwaye incamathele / ukuthi nca kunombono ontsokothileyo wamasuntswana amagama nawo akwalunxulumano oluncukacha nye, kodwa intsingiselo yona ilawulwa yindawo ekuthethawa kuyo kunomfuziselo weleksikhoni yolwimi kwaye nezimpawu zale-sistim (zobubuchule) zilwimi ezinxulumano olunenkukacha ezininzi ezingaminywanga. Kwakhona uPustejovsky, uveza into yokuba, akukho minyo kuhlobo, apho ileksikhali inokuthi iqikelele kwaye akukho mahluko wantsebenziswano phakathi kwamahlelwana oququlo onxulumano oluncukacha-ninzi. Le thiyori inkukacha ninzi ngoko hlobo olungaminywanga.

Kwakhona uPustejovsky, ugqala athi, ukuba iingqwalasela ingentla zilungile ngoko ke le thiyori kufuneka ibe yinxenye yeleksikhali kwaye akukho pregmantiki izakuchazwa, lo thiyori izakuvezwa izakuthiywa ngokuba lunxulumano lolwimi olunenkukacha ezininzi ebuthathaka (WPL's). Ezi mpawu zale sistim / zobu buchule ziza kudweliswa kunxulumano lolwimi olunenkukacha ezininzi ezibuthathaka ezidlamkileyo ngokwesemantiki kwaye zinobuncwane bomelo lwesemantiki.

UPustejovsky uxoxa ngelithi, umahluko wamahlelwana onxulumano lwenkukacha ezininzi zentsebenziswano zichaziwe, inye enophawu oluzimeleyo kunye nemeko ebhekiselwa kuyo.

### **2.3.1 Imifuziselo yeleksikhoni yemveliso**

Ngokuka-Pustejovsky, imveliso yeleksikhoni ingachazwa njengobulumko / ubuchule / sistim equka imigangatho emine yomelo lwesemantiki. Ziquka inkcaza ngolwakhiwo lwe-adyumenti ethi ichaze inani kwaye uhlobo lweeadyumenti ethi ileksikhali izithwale, isakhiwo sesiganeko sobuncawane obaneleyo bokuchaza hayi kuphela isiseko sohlobo lwesiganeko seleksikhoni, kodwa nangaphakathi, kulwakhiwo lweziganekwana: Ulwakhiwo lwekhwaliya olumele iintlobo zemifuziselo yesivisa ne-leksikhali kunye nolwakhiwo lwemifuziselo yeleksikhoni ethi iqaphele ukuba ulwakhiwo lweleksikhali lunxulumana njani nolunye ulwakhiwo kwisichazi magama, yakhiwa kanjani. Ngokubhekiselele ku-Cardelci & Wegner, 1985, Wein kunye no-van Benthem, 1987, uPustejovsky uceba enjenje, ingqokelela yamacebiso emveliso, iqhakamshela imigangatho emine kutoliko lwendibaniselwano yamagama kwindawo ekuthethwa kuyo. Elona cebiso kula macebo abalulekileyo kule ngxoxo yinguqu yesemantiki ebizwa ngokuba lunyanzelo-hlobo



njengomsebenzi wesemantiki othi uguqule l-adyumentu ibelolunye uhlobo olulindelwe ngomsebenzi, apho luzakuthi libeneziphumo zohlobo lwempazamo.

#### **2.4.7 Indibaniselwano eyomeleleyo iqubisana nebuthathaka**

UPustejovsky, ugqala athi, phambi kokuba nakuluphi na uphicotho lokuba imbono-mbini ingancitshiswa njani na, kukho imiba emibini efuna ukumiselwa ngokunxulumene nendibaniselwano. UPustejovsky uwubona umthetho-siseko wendibaniselwano njongowanelisayo ngokwezi ndlela zimbini ekubhekiselelwa kuzo njengendibaniselwano ebuthathaka kunye neyomeleleyo. Kwaye lo mfuziselo awonelanga ngokupheleleyo malunga nendibaniselwano eyenziwe yisemantiki yolwimi lwendalo. Lo nto ithetha ukuba eparamithazi zimbini zibaluleke ekuchazeni amacebiso esemantiki:

- A Inqanaba lendibaniselwano ngaphakathi kwingcaciso umzekelo; zingakanani indibaniselwano ezithi zisetyenziswe kwibinza
- B Zingaphi ingcaciso ezicacise amasuntswana ayimfuneko ekufezeni utoliko olunye / oluzimeleyo lwebinza.

#### **2.5 IMIGANGATHO YOMELO**

Kwesi sahluko uPustejovsky, umisela imiba emibini yokuthimba imveliso yendalo yoyilo lweleksikhali kunye nesuntsu elandisiweyo lesenzeko. Kwakhona uchaza imveliso yeleksikhoni njengendibaniselwano equka lemigangatho mine yomelo, ilandelayo

- 1 Ulwakhiwo lwe-adyumentu: ubalulo lwenani kunye nohlobo lwe-adyumentu yoqibo nokuba zenza kanjani ukuze zibenokuqondwa ngokwesivakalisi (ngokobumbo zivakalisi).
- 2 Ulwakhiwo lwesiganeko: inkcazelo yohlobo lwesiganeko lweleksikhali kunye nebinza, ezintlobo ziquka ubume, inkqubo kunye noguqulo, kwaye iziganeko zinokuba nolwakhiwo lweziganekwana.
- 3 Ulwakhiwo lwekhwaliya: imifuziselo yengcaciso, iquka ukufana, ilungu, itheliki kunye, nendima yomenzeli.
- 4 Ulwakhiwo olufunyanwa kwileksikhoni: Uphawulo lokuba ingaba ulwakhiwo lweleksikhali lunxulumana njani nolunye ulwakhiwo lohlobo lwelatise, kunye negalelo layo kumbutho jikelele weleksikhoni. Le ngqokelela yamacebo emveliso idibanisa



le migangatho mine, ukunika indibaniselwano yotoliko lwamagama kwindawo ekuthethwa kuyo. Ukuquka lemisebenzi yemveliso yinguqulelo yesemantiki ekuqaleni imeko yolwakhiwo olomeleleyo lohlobo lwendibaniso.

- Unyanzelo-hlobo: apho ileksikhali okanye ibinza linyanzelwa kutoliko lwesemantiki ngokomlawuli webinza, ngaphandle kotshintsho lohlobo lwesintaksi. (Lobumbo-sivakalisi).
- Ukhetho olubophelelekileyo: apho ileksikhoni okanye ibinza lisebenza ngokukodwa kulwakhiwo lwebinza ngaphandle kokutshintsha uhlobo lonke lwendibaniselwanwo.
- Indibaniselwano: Apho amalungu aliqela ngaphakathi kwebinza eziphatha njengefankter ezivelisa amasuntswana amatsha amagama angekho leksikhaliyizi kudibaniso.

Kwakhona le nto iquka imiba engabalulwawga yentlobo zesemantiki ezithi zibenobuncwane bendawo ekuthethwa kuyo, ezinjengendlela yokuziphatha kwendibaniselwano, inkcaza yophawu kunye nobalulo lwezenzi ezibuthathaka. Ezi nguqulelo zintathu zesemantiki zibalulekile kule ngxoxo yokuba ungaluthimba njani unxulumano phakathi kwesintaksi eyahlukileyo yengcaciso. Kwakhona uPustejovsky, uxoxa enjenge i-adyument, isiganeko kunye neentlobo zekhwaliya kufuneka zihambelane neemeko zolwakhiwo olomeleleyo ezichazwe luhlobo oluthile kunye nolwakhiwo olufunyanwa kwi-leksikhoni apho yenza imisebenzi yesemantiki yodibaniso.

### 2.5.1 Ulwakhiwo lwe-adyument

UPustejovsky uthatha njengenyaniso into yokuba, isemantiki yeleksikhali ingachazwa njengolwakhiwo olwenziwe ngamalungu amane ezintlobo zine zolwakhiwo lweleksikhali, zibonise izenzi.

- 1 I-adyument yokwenene: ngobumbo sivakalisi ukuqonda ubuninzi obungatshintshiyo kwimeko ethile bungafani kwezinye iimeko ngokwe gama leleksikhoni, umzekelo: "John arrived late".
- 2 Iadyument emayenzeke: iparamithazi ezithile zibeninxaxheba kuqiqiso olungathethekiyo lwekhwaliya kodwa ezithi zingacaciswa ngokobumbo-lwezivakalisi, umzekelo: "John built the house out of bricks".



- 3 I-adyumentu efihlakeleyo: Ipharamitha ezi zibandakanywe ngokwentsingiselo kwigama leleksikhoni. Zinokucaciswa kuphela ngokusebenzisa amahlelewana okanye amagama abalulwayo, umzekelo “Mary buttered her toast with an expensive butter”
- 4 Izongezo zokwenzena: Ipharamithazi ezithi zibalule ingcaciso yoqibo kwaye zithi zibeyinxalenye yemeko yotoliko kwaye azibophelelekanga nakweyiphi / nakoluphi na umelo lwesemantiki.

Ezi zongezo ziquka intetho yethutyana / yesichazi sethutyana, umzekelo, “Mary drove down to New York on Tuesday.” UPustejovsky uqwalasela enjenje, I-adyumentu yokwenene ichaza ezi paramitha ekufuneka zichaziwe kwisintaksi: kwaye uguqulo lwezenzi phakati kwentloko zentsingiselo ezininzi zezenzi ezithi zibenempumela kwintetho yeadyumentu yokwenene iza kolulwa kwezinguqulelo ziquka intetho zamabinzana okhetho inguqulelo enje ngoguqulo lwesenzisa ku (2) eboniswe kwisivakalisi (3) ngokuka.

(Levin, 1998):

- 2     a     The shadow broke.  
       b     John broke the shadow.
- 3     a     Mary carved the doll out of wood.  
           Mary carved the wood into a doll.  
           Marry carved a doll.  
           Mary carved the wood.

UPustejovsky ebhekiselela ku-Levin 1993, uthetha enjenje, kuba intetha yokwenza izinto ayinyanzelekanga, iwonga layo njenge adyumentu lahlukile kwinto ebhaliweyo. Ezi adyumentu zinganyanzelekanga kwinguqulelo ezinjengokwenza izinto / okanye imveliso ezimbini uPustejovsky uzibiza ngokuba zi-adyumentu ezisilelayo. Ziyafuneka kuqibo lolwakhiwo lwezivakalisi ezinobugrama, kodwa zinokushiywa zingacaciswanga kubumbo sivakalisi oluphezulu / kwisintax. Ebhekiselela ku-Winderlich 1987, uPustejovsky uqwalasela enjenje, njenge adyumentu esilelayo, ii-adyumentu ezifihlakeleyo zibhekiselela kundoqo wesemantiki ongakhange abe uyachazwa kwisintaksi, njengoku-bandakanywa kundoqo wesemantiki kwizenzi i-butter kunye no-kick ku-6.

- 6     a     Mary buttered her toast.



- b Hany kicked the wall.

I-adyumententi efihlakeleyo ku-(6a) yinto eqatywe kwisonka esojiweyo / (kwi-toast) ngelixa ku- (6b) ingumenzi oya udibane nodonga. Ngokungafaniyo ne-adyumententi esikelayo ekunganyanzelekanga ukuba icaciswe ngenxa yemeko ezingaphezulu komgangatho wesivakalisi (Njengendawo ekuthethwa kuyo kunye nemfunduso) ii-adyumententi ezifihlakeleyo ziyacaciseka phantsi kwemeko ezithile kwisivakalisi ngokunokwaso, sibizwa ngokuba, xa I-adyumententi ecacisiweyo izimela kuhlotyana lonxulumano lwe-adyumententi efihlakeleyo. Qwalasela ingcaciso yale adyumententi ifihlakeleyo ku-(7).

- 7     a     Mary buttered her toast with margerine / with butter.  
        b     Mary kicked the wall with her gumny leg / with his leg.  
        c     Mary and John danced a waltz / a dance.  
        d     Mary elbowed me with his arthritic elbow / with his elbow.

Kwakhona uPustejousky uceba enjenje, ihlelo lokugqibela kulwakhiwo lwentlobo ze-adyumententi luchazwa kakhulu lulwandiso ngokukodwa ngophawu lwehlelo: zibizwa ngokuba zizongezo. Umzekelo amandla esenzi u-sleep kukuze sichazwe ngokwexeshana on Tuesday ku-(8a) ifunyanwa ngokulunga kohlelo lwezenzi njengesigaba esizimeleyo, uphawu olufanayo lufunyanwa kwisenzi u-see kunye nezichazi zendawo njengaku Boston ku-(8b).

- 8     a     John slept late on Tuesday.  
        b     Mary saw Bill in Boston.

Kolu hlalutyo lungentla kuphela ngumahluko phakathi kweadyumententi kunye namabinzana. Ithetha ukuthi iziphumo za lentshukumo yethiyori zisenokubaluleka, njengoluhlobo, asikuba zimpawuzeleksikhali zegama elinye ezizakuthi zimisele umqondiso wengqiqo yebinzana njengohlobo oluqinisekileyo lwe-adyumententi. Inzenzo zendibaniselwano zingadala I-adyumententi okanye efihlakeleyo I-adyumententi kuphuhliso lwebinzana nokulunga kwendibaniselwano kwibinza. Kwaye I-adyumententi yokwenene iyasilela ngokulunga kwesemantiki kulwandiso lwesemantiki, le adyumententi yokwenene ingasilela ngenxa yokulunga kwesemantiki yolwandiso njengaku (9b).

- 9     a     Mary showed her paintings to John.



- b Mary showed a movie (to John).

Ngokuka Pustejovsky, lo mbono wohlobo lwe adyumenthi yi-adyumenthi esilelayo ingahlelwa ngebinza elipheleleyo njengo mbekwa-Phambili PP ku-(10a) okanye ibinza elidityaniswe kwi-adyumenthi yokwenene njengaku (10b).

- 10 a Mary built a house with wood.  
b Mary built a wooden house.

Xa lento isenzeka, into yokwenza ibizwa / ichazwa njenge adyumenthi efihlakeleyo njenga ku-11.

- 11 Mary built a wooden house out of pine.

Le nto icacisa ukuba u-(10b) I-adyumenthi esileleyo sele ithabathekile ngokuthambileyo okungathanga ngqo njengesichazi senjongosenzi ethe ngqo ngelixa u-(11), ngaphezu kokubalulwa ngebinza "out of pine" ivumelekile kwanelendlela inye njenge adyumenthi efihlakeleyo. Ngoku uPustejovsky uza kusibonisa: isemantiki yeleksikhali yezenzi ezimeleyo lulwakhiwo lwe adyumenthi yobalulo:

- 13 Build  
Argstr Arg 1 = Animate – individual  
Arg 2 = Artifact  
Arg 1 = Material

- 14 Butter  
Argst Arg 1 = Human  
Arg 2 = Phys – object  
Arg 1 = Butter

- 15 Kick  
Arg 1 = Animate – individual  
Arg 2 = Phys – object  
Arg 1 = Leg

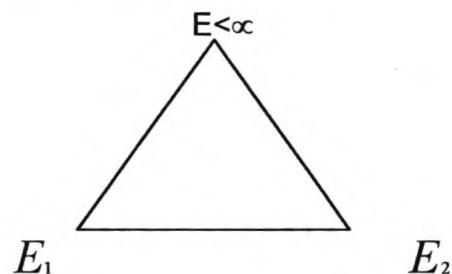
### 2.5.2 Ulwakhiwo lwesiganeko esandisiweyo

Ebhekiselela ku-Moens kunye no-Steedman 1988, uPustejovsky, 1991, uxoxa enjenje, undoqo wemfuno zomahluko wenkcazelo zeziganeko ukuze ukukwazi ukuthimba ezinye ezenzeko ezinxulumene nemilo kunye ne-aktiousarien. Kulo mba eyona nto iyimfuneko yindlela yazo zombini zibonise ulwakhiwo lweziganekwana ezinxulumene ne leksikhali ngelixa ingcaciso olona nxulumano luyimfuneko phakathi kweziganeko kunye ne adyumentu zezenzi kuPustejovsky, 1995, esi sixhobo sibizwa ngokuba lubopho lweparamitha lubhenciwe, luthi luvumele abantu babophe ecaciswayo luluhlu lweparamitha ezimeleyo: ulwakhiwo lwe adyumentu kunye nolwakhiwo lwesi ganeko. Unikwe uluhlu lwe adyumentu kwakunye nolwakhiwo lwesiganeko njengoko lubonisiwe njengoluhlu lwesiganeko olutshintshatshintshayo,

{Argst        Arg 1, Arg 2, Arg}

{Eventstr    Event 1, Event 2, Event}

UPustejovsky, 1988, 1991, ubanga enjenje, ulwakhiwo lwesigaweko no-lwakhiwo lweziganekwana njengokuba kubonisiwe ngezantsi:



Omnye umzekelo ka-Pustejovsky, 1991 ekunye no-Bowty, 1979, Moens kunye no-Steedman, 1998 bathetha benjenje okanye beza nalomzekelo, izenzi u-bulb uphicothwe ngolona hlobo njengoko uquka uphuhliso lwenqubo kunye neziphumo zobume ziyalelwe ngonxulumano ukupheliswa komyalelo wento ye  $<\infty$

Build

E = process

Eventstr

E 2 = State

Restr  $<\infty$



Ngaphandle ko-build onyanzelisayo, iintlobo zeziganekwana zazo zombini kwi-nkqubo kunye nobume, isenzi esikhaphayo sivumela iziganeko zetelikhi, uguqulo, okanye inkqubo. Kwaye oluhlobo lonyanzelo luyafana nolo ulwakhiwo lolungelelwaniso olufuneka lubenje ngolu hlobo:

	Accompany
	$E1 = T1$
Eventstr	$E2 = T1$
	$\text{Restr} = O \propto$

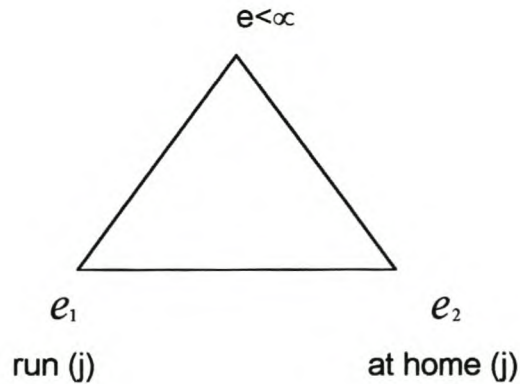
Ebhekiselela ku-Talmy 1978, 1976 kunye nabanye uPustejovsky kudala waqaphela ukuba inkcazelo yesiganeko enikiweyo sisenzi ingatyeba kulandelwano lokwakhiwa kweziganeko kulo mboniso ungentla. Iingqwalasela zegrama zingacaciswa kwezi zinto kwaye zingabizwa ngokuba sisikhokelo sesiganeko isikhokelo sesiganeko sinika indlela yokubonisa uhlobo oluphambili kunye nolusemva lwe-adyumenti yesiganeko. Ulwakhiwo lwesiganeko lunika ulwakheko apho isiganeko singayalelwa sisandulela sethutyana kodwa ngodandalaziso. Umzekelo wodandalaziso lwesiganeko ( $e^*$ ).

Unikwe luphawu lwesikhokelo luchaze njengo ( $e^*$ ). Indima yemvumelwano lwentloko / lwesikhokelo kuboniso / kumelo lwesintaksi kukuphawula udandalaziso kunye neyantlukwano. Imithetho yovumelwano yolawulo, ziyachasana kulwakhiwo lophawu ngokweentloko / izikhokelo zamabinza. Kwakhona ebhekiselela ku-Busa (1995) uPustejovsky uxoxa enjenje, kukho iinkuthazo ezininzi zokuveza indawo yolwakhiwo lwesiganeko.

- 29     a     John ran home for an hour.  
          b     My terminal for died two days.  
          c     Mary left town for two weeks.

Olu lwakhiwo lomthi wesiganeko luboniswe ku-(30), apho ulwakhiwo lwekhwaliya lubonisiweyo kwaye uPustejovsky ubhekiselela ngokungafaniyo kwingcaciso ezinxulumeneyo kuzobo mthi.

30



Kuqikelelwa ukuba inkqubo kuphela kunye nobume lumela isihlomelo sexesha, de ichazwe ngesihlomelo ku-(29) inobugrama, nangona isivakalisi sibonisa isiganeko setheliki. UPustejovsky uqhubekeka enjenje, utoliko olukhoyo lunesihlomelo esichaza ixesha lobume bokugqibela ku-(29) John spent an hour at home. (ku-29b) The terminal was dead for two days. (ku-29c) Mary was out of town for a period of two weeks. Kwakhona esinye isenzeko esikwafana nesikhokelo sesiganeko sangasekhohlo (umzekelo iinguqulo) apho zichazwa, sisihlomelo esiqinisekileyo esinjengo careless kunye no-quiety zibizwa ngokuba zinguqu ezingaphaya kwesiganekwana

- 31    a        John built the house carelessly.  
       b        Mary quietly drew a picture.

Ku (31) u-careless (unje) uchaza indlela yesakhiwo ethi yenze indlu ibeyinto ekhoyo iyafana nempawu, ezifunyanwa kwisivakalisi u-(31b)

### 2.5.3 Ulwakhiwo lwekhwaliya

Ngokuka Pustejovsky, ulwakhiwo lwekhwaliya lulwakhiwo oluthi lunike unyanzelo olunxulumene kwileksikhali. Olu lwakhiwo lwekhwaliya luchaza iimilo ezine ezibalulekileyo zentsingiselo zamagama

- Ilungu: unxulumano phakathi kwenjongosenzi kunye namalungu ahlukeneyo.
- Ukufana: le ithi izahlule phakathi kommandla omkhulu.
- Itheliki: injongo kunye nomsebenzi wayo.
- Umenzi: Imeko eziquka imvelaphi yayo okanye izinto eza nazo.



UPustejovsky ugqala enjenje, efana nenguqu eyenziwayo ukuze kuthinjwe unxulumano olunenkukacha ezininzi sokuziphatha kunye nesenzeko sesuntsu lendalo.

Kukho amanqaku amabini jikelele anokwenziwa anxulumene nendima yekhwaliya:

- 1 Sonke isigaba sicacisa ulwakhiwo lwekhwaliya.
- 2 Hayi zonke ileksikhoni ezithi zithwale ixabiso lo nomsebenzi we-leksikhoni.

UPustejovsky ugqala enjenje, apho ikhwaliya ixoxwayo ibonakalo ilisuntsu elinye, njengengqokelela yempawu okanye iziganeko ezinxulumene neleksikhoni ezithi zicacise bhetele yintoni intsingiselo yegama. Ukuze uyiqonde kakuhle cinga ngemizekelo yezibizo ezinjengo-cookie kunye ne-beer intsingiselo ezi zibizo zibini ekutyeni kunye nesiselo. Ngenxa icookie iligama elichaza uhlobo oluthile lwento ehlabathini, isibizo ukutya siboniswa ngokwenza umsebenzi wokukhangela ukuba kunokwenziwa ntoni ngento.

Eli gama lichazwe ngokwelungu, ngohlobo lokuba ukutya yinto enokuthi umntu ayitye, ngenjongo ethile. Iimpawu ezikwafana zifunyanwa kuchazo olunxulumene nesibizo l-beer. Iteliki khwel yesibizo ukutya siguqula umsebenzi wemilo yentsingiselo, eboniswe ngokungamiselekanga njenge thelikhi = (ukutya) yitya. Kwakhona umahluko phakathi kwesemantiki enxulumene nezibizo ezinjenge novel kunye ne-dictionary zimiselwe kwinto eyenziwe nezi zinto zahlukileyo. Xa umntu efunda l-noveli, isichazi magama zezo kucebisa. Amaxabiso endawo zekhwaliya aguqula olu lwazi lomsebenzi wenoveli kunye nesichazi-magama lufundo lwetheliki kunye nocebiso lwetheliki.

Asiyiyo yodwa indlela yokwahlula ezingqiqo, ukwakhiwa komxholo kwi-noveli ngokwesimo libali, ngelixa isichazi magama (dictionary) sichaza ngokuba luluhlu lwamagama. Lo mahluko uthinjwe ngendima yelungu elicacisa umahluko wolwakhiwo lwangaphakathi. Kwaye uPustejovsky uxoxa enjenje, nangemfano zonke njengokuba ichaziwe ngokuqaphelekayo iindima zelungu, inoveli kunye nesichazi-magama ziyohluka xa zichazwa kwindima yomenzeli. Qwalasela umzekelo wolwakhiwo lwekhwaliya ku-(33):

Const =

Qualia

Formal =

Telic =

Agent =

UPustejovsky uqwalasela enjenje, lo mzekelo ungentla ubonisa ukuba njani ileksikhali kwaye nangona injongo zenoveli ikukwenza ufundo kwaye iza nomntu eyibhalile, kwaye ayifuni kubanga izibizo eziqhelekileyo inoveli ebonisa ngokwenene eso senzeko. Qwalalasela lo mzekelo

	Novel		
Qualia	Const	=	Narrative
	Formal	=	Book
	Telic	=	Reading
	Agent	=	Writing

Lo mzekelo ungentla awuzinaki iindawo ezenziwa ngento ekukhuthazeni impatho yonxulumano olunenkukacha ezininzi lwesemantiki: Isibizo inoveli ivisa ngendlela apha eqhelekileyo, kodwa ngendlela ethile kwiindawo ekuthethwa kuzo ivumela utoliko oluvunyelwe ngokwesintaksi yendawo ethile kunye nesemantiki yendawo ekuthethwa kuyo njengolwakhiwo kwakhona kwisemantiki yegama njengakwisivakalisi esinjengesi: Mary enjoyed the novel.

Isisombululo kolu nxulumano kukuphatha / kukuxoxa ixabiso lekhwaliya njenge ngcaciso enentlobo ezicacisiweyo ncakasana kunye nonxulumano lolwakhiwo (Pustejovsky, 1991, Copestake and Briscoe, 1992). Ngoku nxulumanisa ii-adyumenti kunxulumano lokufunda lunikwe ngokucacileyo (ku-35) lubonisa eyona mbophelelo yesivisa.

	Novel		
Qualia	Formal	=	Book (x)
	Telic	=	Read (yx)

Njengoko unikiwe umzekelo ku-35 noko ngoku kungenzeka ukuba sibone apho luvela khona ulwazi lwendawo ekuthethwa kuyo ukuze siqhube isuntsu kwindawo ekuthethwa kuyo njengoko ibonisiwe ngezenzi u-begin kunye no-finish.

37 Mary began a novel.

John finished the cigarette.

John began his second beer.



UPustejovsky uguqukela kwisemantiki yezenzi kunye nendima eyidlalayo ngokwe ngcaciso yesiseko sekhwaliya yesemantiki. Enye into enokuchazwa apha / echazwayo ngu-Pustejovsky kukwahlula ngokubanzi ukuba imifuziselo yengcaciso ibekwe njani kwisenzi solwakhiwo lwesiganeko. Ngokuziva, ubume besivisa buyahambelana. nendima yofano kulwakhiwo lwekhwaliya, umzekelo: state affairs with exists, without reference to how it came about. Nxulumanisa umzekelo ku-38 isivisa u-fall onganakanga nkcukacha zolwakhiwo lwe-adyument.

#### Tall

Eventstr      E1      =      e1 : state  
Qualia          Formal = Tall (e, x)

Lo mzekelo ungentla ka-tall ubonisa umahluko phakathi komgangatho wohlobo, kodwa ngumahluko wesiseko sekhwaliya, apho umgangatho wesivisa uquka imbekiselo, ezo nesiphumo sobume, umzekelo agentive quele. Kwakhona uPustejovsky unxulumanisa ulwakhiwo lwekhwaliya olunxulumene nesivisa sesenzisa (inguqu) ezi zenzi ziphicothwa njengeziquka isiqalo sokwenza okanye inkqubo elandelwa ziziphumo zobume la mabinza mabini azotywa ngqo kumenzeli kunye neendima zofano lwekhwaliya ngokwahlukeneyo. Nxulumanisa injongo-senzi yesenzi u-break njengoko ibonisiwe ngezantsi: 39

#### Break

E1 = e1 : Process  
Eventstr =      E2 = e2 : State  
                 Restr= L2  
Qualia = formal = broken (e2, y)  
                 = agentitive = break – act (e, x, y)

UPustejovsky uxoxa enjenje, izivisa ezicacisa Inkqubo ziyohlulwa ngokwendlela yokucacisa unxulumaniso lwesivisa ebhekiselela ku Talmy (1975, 1985) uPustejovsky ugqala enjenje iilwimi ezininzi ziyawohlula amahlelo enkqubo exesha langoku kunye nexesha elidlulileyo, apho ifomal latter iquka izenzi ezinjengo sleep kunye no-snore. Lo mahluko awohlukanga kuyaphi kumahluko we anokhusathivu yolwimi. Nxulumanisa ulwakhiwo lwekhwaliya lwehlelo lenqubo yesixando sokwenziwa ne senzi u-baleka (run) kwaye isenzi esithwele ulwakhiwo lwe khwaliya ku-40 ngelixa isenzi sesixando sokwenziwa u-sleep enesakhiwo ku-41.

Run  
 40 Eventstr = E1 = e1 : Process  
 Qualia = Agentive = run act (e1, x)

41 Sleep  
 Eventstr = E1 = e1 : Process  
 Qualia = Formal = sleep (e1, x)

uPustejovsky ubhekiselela kulo mzekelo ungentla ka-Henrich, 1985 etal; uxoxa enjenje umahluko ophathelele kulwakhiwo lwekhwaliya ngulo iinkqubo ziyalungelana ngeendlela ezahlukeneyo, kukucacisa gca isiphumo sobume kwindima yofano ngendlela yendibaniselwano, kwaye inokwenzeka kuphela nenkqubo yesixando sokwenziwa, kwaye ibonisiwe ngolwakhiwo olunjengo, run to the store and run home. Inkcazo yeenkqubo zesixando sokwenziwa jikelele aziluvumeli ulwakhiwo lozalwano kwaye iyantswinywa kuguqulo kwisihlomelo sexesha njengaku, sleep for an hour, cough all night.

#### **2.5.4 Intsebenziswano yomgangatho wesemantiki**

Kulo mba uPustejovsky udibanisa imigangatho emithathu ye-adyumenti, isiganeko kunye nekhwaliya, ukuze akhe ulwimi olunye lokubonisa isemantiki yezeksikhoni, kwaye olu hlobo lunamalungu amabini, uhlobo loluhlu lwamanqanaba ngokwalo, kunye nothinto olusebenza kwezi ntlobo. Ukuze wazi ukuba lemigangatho mithathu ukuba ichazwe njani kwicandelo elingaphambili.

#### **ULWAKHIWO LWE KHWALIYA**

Kwesi sahluko uPustejovsky uphonononga ukuba zenze njani ileksikhali ukudibanisa / ukubumba inkcazelo yesemantiki yekhwaliya kwaye nangakumbi – nangakumbi, yinto ulwakhiwo lwekhwaliya oluthi luyazise. Kwaye elona nqaku kwesi sahluko kukuphonononga ngokuzeleyo isintaksi yolwakhiwo lwekhwaliya kwaye iyintoni indima eyicacisayo enokuba sengcingeni yentsingiselo yegama kunye nendibaniselwano.



### 2.6.1 Imifuziselo yengcaciso

Ebhekiselela ku-Moranesik (1975), uPustejovsky uyibona iimifuziselo yengcaciso njenge ndlela yolwakhiwo oluqondakalayo kunye nentelekelelo. Kwakhona uPustejovsky uqikelela ukuba, ulwakhiwo lwesemantiki yeleksikhali luchazwa ngemigangatho emine yotoliko kwaye phaya ngaphambili kukho indima ezine zesiseko ezithi zimisele / zenze ulwakhiwo lwekhwaliya zeleksikali. Ngoku ingcaciso iza kuba sekubeni ziyintoni ezi ndima kwaye kutheni ziyimfuneko yamalungu esemantiki. Apha ngezantsi ku-6.2 iikhwaliya zinikwe utoliko olungamiselekanga kunye namaxabiso agangawo apho indima nganye inokuthi iqikelele.

1. Ilungu: Unxulumano phakathi kwenjongosezi kunye namalungu ahlukeneyo.
  - (i) Material.
  - (ii) Weight.
  - (iii) Parts and component elements.
  
2. Ukufana: Le ithi izahlule phakathi kommandla omkhulu.
  - (i) Orientation.
  - (ii) Magnitude.
  - (iii) Shape.
  - (iv) Dimensionality.
  - (v) Color.
  - (vi) Position.
  
3. Iteliki: Injongo kunye nomsebenzi wayo
  - (i) The purpose that an agent has in performing an act.
  - (ii) Built-in function on aim which specifies certain activities.
  
4. Umenzeli: iimeko eziquka imvelaphi yayo okaye izinto ezanazo.
  - (i) Creator.
  - (ii) Artifact.
  - (iii) Natural kind.
  - (iv) Casual chain.

Ngokuka-Pustejovsky, zininzi iindlela zokufumana inkcazelo yegama, kwaye ikhwaliya ingabonwa kuqala njengodweliso olulula / olucacileyo lwendima, okanye lubizwe njengempawu ezinxulunyaniswa neleksikhali.

Akusiyo ngxaki, ukuba ulwakhiwo lwekhwaliya lungantoni lungoqikelelo oluyinqgokelela yonyanzelo lwesemantiki apho igama lithi liqondwe ngokuthi lizinze elulwimini. Indlela yengcaciso ethi ichaze igama njengelibonisa uqikelelo oluthile lunokwenza umahluko kwindlela apho igama lithi lisetyenziswe kulwimi. Ngoku umbono kwimveliso yeleksikhoni yahlukile.

Ikhwaliya ibonelela ngolwakhiwo apho iinguqulelo zesemantiki zingasebenza ukubonisa utshintsho lweleksikhali okanye ibinza. Ezi nguqulelo ngamacebiso eemveliso ezinje ngezi: unyanzelo-hlobo, ukhetho olubophelelekileyo, kunye nodityaniso apho zithi zakhiwe / zizotywe ngokungathethekiyo kwintsingiselo entsha. Le misebenzi ithi isetyenziswe kuphela ngokulunga kolawulo lonxulumano lweleksikhali, into ethi, usetyenziso lwazo lusekelwe ngokwesintaksi kunye nobume bemeko yesemantiki apho ibinza lithi libonakale khona / livezwe. Kwaye umelo lwesemantiki luthi lubelula, ukuba yenza lula intelekelelo yengqiqo okanye utoliko.

Kwakhona iikhwaliya zinomtsalane kulo mba, phantsi kokuba zingolwakhiwo kuphela lolwazi lwamagama, kodwa “zikwacebisa” utoliko lwamagama kwindawo ekuthethwa kuzo. Cinga / qwalasela le mizekelo ilandelayo, ukuba yenzeka kanjani na ukuba amabinzana ezibizo azintloko kunye nesifezekisi zibenegalelo ekubaluleni utoliko losetyenziso lwesenzi kwisivakalisi u-(1) kunye ne-NP's ku-2 ngezantsi.

- 1
  - a John used the new knife on the turkey.
  - b Mary has used soft contact lenses since college.
  - c This car uses unleaded gasoline.
  - d My wife used the subway every day.
  
- 2
  - a The toners used in copying machines.
  - b The yeast used in beer.

Ebhakiselela ku-Grinshaw kunye no-Rosen, 1990, uPustejovsky ugqala enjenje, ecacisa le mizekelo ingentla kwisivakalisi sokuqala (1a) ulwazi lwemesi njengesi-xhobo esithi



sivumeleke ukuba sisike uqoqosho ngokungathethekiyo, nangona ichazwa njenge senzeko sokusika.

Ngokufanayo naku (1b) izibuko zancedisa ukubona, kwaye ukusetyenziswa kwazo kubhekiselele ekunxityweni kwazo. Ukubaluncendo lwesenzi njengokuba sisetyenzisiwe silula ngokwesemantiki kwaye lubhekiselelwa njengelingabalulwayo ngenxa yesenzeko esisenzayo. Isivakalisi u-(1d) umzekelo, inkcazelo-ntetho “u-my wife travelled on the subway, iqgityiwe, NP’s ku-(2) ibonisa umtsalane onomahluko wesuntsu, apho injongo senzi ku-(2a) ziqondwa njengezimeleyo ekusetyenzisweni-kwindawo yonxulumano, nangona ku-(2b) isivakalisi sitolikwa njengento yezinto ezisenziswe kwinkqubo yokwenza, beer. Ukubonisa ukuba ulwakhiwo lwekhwaliya lucacisa utoliko ngokwendawo ekuthethwa kuyo, qwalasela lentsingiselo malunga nendawo ekuthethwa kuyo yesenzi u-enjoy, yesivisa sixhotyiswa ngenkcazelo esuka kwisifezekisi.

- 3     a     Mary enjoyed the movie last night (watching).
- b     John quite enjoys his morning coffee (drinking).
- c     Bill enjoyed Steven Kings last book (reading).

Kwingcaciso ka-Pustejovsky, yale mizekelo ingentla kukho uninzi lwendlela zokonwabela izinto kunye nokuqondwa kwezi zivakalisi kwenziwe kwalula lutoliko omalwenziwe lwezinto kunye nezenzeko ezinxulumene nenjongosenzi. Ikhwaliya yenjongosenzi ingabonwa njenge nqaku eliqalayo apho kwakhiwa utoliko oluthi lungakheki. Ngoku ke indima yetelike ku-movie, coffee kunye no-book nakanjani ngumsebenzi wezenzeko zokubukela / of watching the moving, drinking his morning coffee and reading king’s latest book ngokwendawo ezisetyenziswa kuzo kutoliko lwe -NP. Kwakhona uPustejovsky, uqaphela oku, usetyenziso ngokwendawo ekuthethwa kuyo kwesuntsu lesenzi alufuni nokusuka kwisifezekisi semantiki, kodwa singaphenjelelwa ngendlela-ngendlela ngentloko. Qualasela umzekelo ku-(4a) kukho amanqaku amabini abenegalelo kutoliko lwe-ellipse yesivisa, ulwakhiwo lwekhwaliya lunxulumene nentloko NP kunye nenjongozenzi ezimbini NP’s. Izifezekisi zichongwa njengamagama e-airports ngazo ivumela ulwakhiwo olunye omalwenzeke elotoliko lokuhlala, uso / uthatho njalo-njalo.

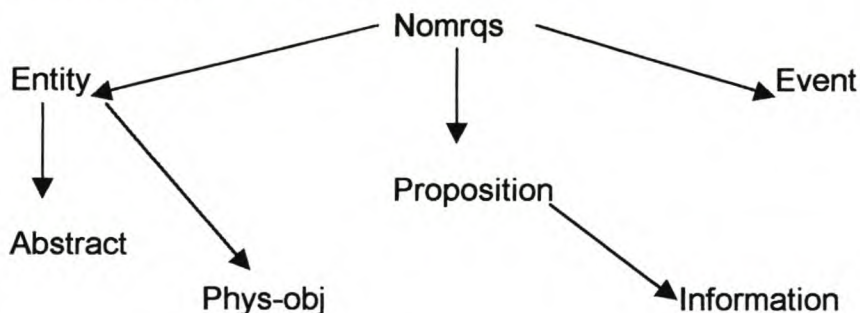
- 4     a     Most commercial pilots prefer Kennedy to Logan.
- b     Most commercial pilots prefer New York to Boston.



Nangona olu toliko lukwakhona kwisivakalisi u-(4a) kulula ukubonisa igama kususela oko olu fundo lwezifizekisi zifumane intlobo yohlobo yesikhululo seenqwelo moya kudityaniso lwesivakalisi.

### 2.6.2 Ulwakhiko lwekhwaliya yezibizo

Apha uPustejovsky, uphonononga ubunzulu bendlela nobuyimfuneko yokuchaza isemantiki ye-NP's kwaye ngakumbi ingqiqo yokuziphatha kwezibizo ezinentsingiselo ezininzi ezinje nge-window kunye no-door. Le ndlela ivelisa uphicotho lwentlobo zamagama zemigangatho emine yomelo. Kwicala lezibizo lento ithetha ukuba umbono wohlelo lwesemantiki kwindawo ezifaneleyo zolwakhiwo lwenkqubo, ulwakhiwo lwe-adyumenti kunye nolwakhiwo lwekhwaliya. Kwakhona kwakweli candelo uPustejovsky ebhekiselela ku-Copestake etal, uPustejovsky, uqikelela enjenje, indlela esekelwe kulwakhiwo lophawu lohlobo njengoko isetyenzisiwe kulwakhiwo lweleksikhali. Olu hlobo luquka uhlobo lwamanqwanqwa kunye nendlela enyanzelekileyo esebenza kwezintlobo. Inqwanqwa ku-6.1 umzekezo lubonisa ukuba zilungiselelwe njani iimpawu kulwakhiwo lwelathikhi, apho iimorgs zibhekiselela kuhlobo olubopheleleke phezulu ukwenzela iintlobo ezikhoyo, umbekwa-phambili kunye nenkqubo. Kwakhona uPustejovsky uza kugxininisa kwimilo zolwimi okokubana kwenzeka njani ukuba imveliso yeleksikhoni ikwazi ukusebenzisa ulwakhiwo lwentlobo zophawu.



Kwakhona uPustejovsky uyaqhubekeka exoxa ngeengxaki ngengqiqo ezintsingiselo-ninzi nokuba zenze njani izibizo ezinjengo-window kunye no-door kwisivakalisi u-(8) kunye no-(9) ukuba bathwale utoliko olubini olwahlukileyo, inye ingqiqo inxulumane nenye.

- 8     a     John crawled through the window.  
        b     Mary broke the window.



- 9      a      Mary painted the door.  
          b      Mary walked through the door.

Ukuyicacisa lemizekelo ingentla isibizo ngasinye sinamsuntswana amabini egama: Uboniso lwento engaphathekayo kunye noboniso lwembono. Ngoku uPustejovsky kunye no-Anick (1988) bachaza intsingiselo “yale mifanekiso mibini” izibizo ezifunyanwa zinxulumene, apho ezi-adyumenti zombini zithabatha indawo kwintsingiselo yesibizo. Ukongeza kwi-adyumenti yokwenene ukungqinisisa kula masuntswana mabini, kukho idyumenti yomakwenzeke eyenza intelekelelo kwi-plane apho u-door okanye i-window zikhoyo. Kwaye kukho amahlelo amaninzi ezibizo, ezibhekiselele kwimilinganiselo emibini yenjongozenzi ezinjengo-room, fireplace kunye no-pipe.

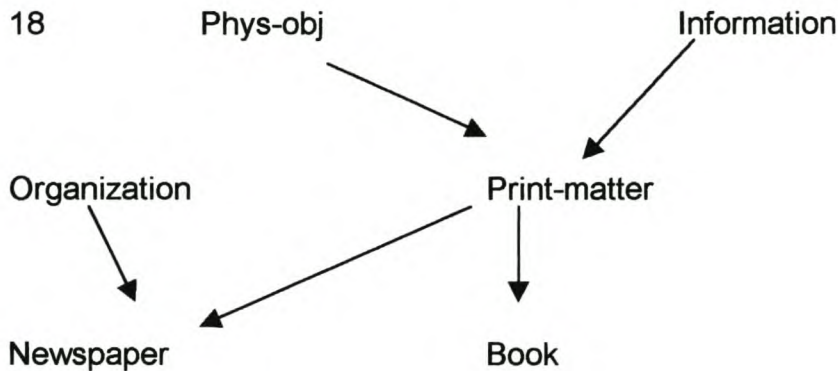
Zinomtsalane kakhulu ngokwesemantiki ngoba zizimbono-mbini ngokunjalo, zibhekiselela kwijongosenzi okanye kumbono okanye kuzo zombini. Amandla eleksikhali ukuba amasuntswana amaninzi yinto uPustejovsky kunye no-Anick (1988) babhekiselela kuyo njenge (Lexical conceptual paradigm LCP). Njengoko ibisele ixoxiwe ngentla, isibizo esinjenge-newspaper sivela kaninzi ngokwahlukeneyo kwindawo esisetyenziwa kuyo, sinako ukusebenza mhlawumbi njengo-mbutho, into engaphathekayo okanye equlathe ingxelo kumanqaku ephepa-ndaba (newspaper).

- 10     a      The newspaper attacked the president for raising taxes.  
          b      Mary spilled coffee on the newspaper.  
          c      John got angry at the newspaper.

Kwakhona uPustejovsky, uphicotha iinguqulelo eziboniswa yingqiqo enentsingiselo ezininzi ezinje ngezi ziphinda-phindiweyo ngezantsi:

- 11     a      Count / mass aharnation, lamb.  
          b      Container / Containee aharnation, bottle.  
          c      Figure / ground reversals, door, window.  
          d      Product / produces diathesis, newspaper, honda.  
          e      Plant / food alternation, fig, apple.  
          f      Process / result diathesis, examination, merger.  
          g      Place / people diathesis, city, New York.

Ngokuka-Pustejovsky, lombono wentlobo zingahlula amasuntswana e-newspaper kunye ne-book njengaku (18) ngezantsi, kwaye ngalento zingacacisa umahluko kwingqiqo ezinentsingiselo ezininzi ezifumanekayo kwezi zibizo (zika 8.2)



### 2.6.3 Utoliko lokufana kwekhwel

Ngokuka Pustejovsky awona mahlelo alinganayo ngokunxulumene nezibizo ziziseko zesigaba esichazayo. Kulapho ukufana kwekhwel kusahlula injongosenzi kwingqokelela enkulu. Kukho ulwakhiwo olubini olunxulumene nokufana kwekhwel:

- 19
- a Uhlobo olulula: ixabiso lendima efanayo luyafana nohlobo lwentlobo ye-adyumentu.
  - b Uhlobo olumbhaxa: ixabiso lendima efanayo luchaza unxulumano phakathi kwe-adyumentu yentlobo ezahlukeneyo.

Ngendlela yokucacisa, uhlobo lwe-adyumentu yezibizo ingacacisa ngokugqibeleleyo ingxelo yegalelo lokufana kwekhwel. Ngendlela apha yokubonisa, izibizo, man kunye no-woman zintlobo zomntu, zohluka ngokwesini, isivisa esichaza izinto ezahlukeneyo. Umahluko uyafumaneka kudibaniso ukwenza umahluko wezintlobo zimbini phantsi kohlobo lomntu, kwaye ukususela ngoku olu phawu lumelwe njengelungu lokwahlula, lusebezisa isivisa sobuduna, kubonisiwe ngezantsi:

	Man
Argstr	= Arg 1 = x
	Const = Male (x)
Qualia	= Formal = x



### 2.6.4 Utoliko lwekhwel

Ngokuka-Pustejovsky ulwazi lokuba 'sibeselwani' ngokwe-aristotles (physics II) yenjongosenzi iqukwe kwikhwel yomenzeli yeleksikhali ezinxulumene nayo. Indlela ethi into idalwe ngayo yindlela iza kuthi icacise umahluko wentlobo yendalo kwinto emayenzeke.

### 2.6.5 Utoliko lwelungu lekhwel

Apha uPustejovsky ugqala athi, ilungu lekhwel libhekiselele, hayi kuphela kwindawana zenjongosenzi, kodwa ichazelwa injongosenzi, kanye-kanye yintoni ingqiqo yenjongosenzi, ukuba olo nxulumano lusekho. Jonga kumzekelo wesibizo hand ngezantsi sibonisa ukuba yenza njani ukubonisa, ukuba yintoni ingqiqo yendawo yaso.

	Hand			
Argstr	= Arg 1	=	x	: Limb
	Formal	=	x	
Qualia	= Const	=	part-of (x, y : body)	

Lo nto ithetha ukuthi, unxulumano kwilungu luvumela intelekelelo kwinto emiselweyo kananjalo nakwinto eyimiselayo, endaweni, umzekelo, hand (le yingcebiso yotoliko lwelungu ngokucatshulwe (ku-Vikner kunye no-Hansens 1994).

### 2.6.6 Utoliko lekhweli yetelikhi

Ngokuka-Pustejovsky ikhweli yetelikhi ichaza ukuba yintoni injongo okanye umsebenzi wengqiqo. Ngaphandle kombono wemisebenzi yesemantiki enxulumene neleksikhali ngokomthetho wenkcazelo zendima yethiyetha UPustejovsky uthi ikhweli yetelikhi ichaza ukuba yintoni injongo okanye umsebenzi wengqiqo. Ngaphandle kombono wemisebenzi yesemantiki enxulumene neleksikhali ngokomthetho wenkcazelo zendima yethiyetha. UPustejovsky uxoxe wenjenje, ulwazi lweleksikhali luqulatha iindlela zengcaciso ezinxulumene negama. Ngesi sizathu, akukho nto ilula enye-nenye ezotywa phakathi kwendima yethiyetha kunye nekhweliya. Qwalasela, umzekelo, yenza njani ikhweli yetelikhi ukufumana umahluko wemilo wendima zethiyetha, kodwa azinakunxulunyaniswa nayo nenye eyazo ngokugqibeleleyo.

### 2.6.7 Iindlela ze telikhi

- (i) Itelikhi ethe ngqo: Yinto apho isenzo senzeka ngqo.
- (ii) Injongo yetelikhi: Into esetyenziswa ukwenza lula isenzeko esithile qwalasela le mizekelo ilandelayo:

Beer				
Arg str	=	Arg 1	=	x Liquid
		Formal	=	x
Qualia	=	Telic	=	drink (e, y, x)

Eqinisekisa kwintlobo yokuqala ngasentla yikhwel yetelikhi yesibizo esinjenge-beer, apho intelekelelo kwisenzeko sokusela siquka iintlobo zezibizo ezinje ngenjongosenzi yesivisa ukusela (drink). Injongo zenjongosenzi sisenzeko esinikwe kwindima ye-telikhi. Umzekelo wesibini wokusetyenziswa kweTelikhi wenjongo-telikhi, kukufumana injongosenzi ezithi zisetyenziswe ekwenzeni isenzeko esinjenge sibizo tools, nesibizo esinjenge knife:

Knife				
Arg str	=	Arg – 1	=	x: Tool
		Formal	=	x
Qualia	=	Telic	=	Cut (e, x, y)

Ngokuka-Pustejovsky, ngokucacileyo zezintlobo zonxulumano phakathi kwentlobo zekhwaliya ezithi zivumele kwa inguqulelo efanayo ebonwa kumenzeli kunye nezixhobo ezabelana nolwakhiwo lwesenzisa.

- 29 a The hammer broke the glass.  
b Mary broke the glass with a hammer.
- 30 a The knife cut the bread.  
b John cut the bread with the knife.

Kwakhona ngolu melo lwethelikhi iintlobo ezithe gqa-gqa kunye nomenzeli wencwadi ezinikwe ngasentla, uPustejovsky angalucacisa ngokugqibeleleyo ulwakhiwo lwekhwaliya ngezantsi:

Book



Argst	Arg1 x	;	Information
	Arg 2 x	:	Phys-obj
			Information phys-obj-lep
	Formal	=	Hold (y, x)
Qulia	Telic	=	Read (e, w, x, y)
	Agent	=	Write (e, v, x, y)

Isivisa u-read and write, kulo mbono, zikhetha injongosenzi yohlobo olu-gqaba-gqaba olubalulwe ngezithintelo hayi ezinye.

### 2.6.8 Uzobo kwikhwaliya

Kweli icandelo uPustejovsky, uqwalasela kancane ziyintoni iziphumo zomelo lwesiseko sekhwaliya, ingaba zizotywa njani ii-adyumenti kwisintaksi. Ukubonisa lomgaqo, qwalasela umelo lweleksikhali lwesenzi u-kill.

	Kill	e1	=	e1	:	Process
		e2	=	e2	:	State
eventstr		Restr	=	L2		
		Head	=	e1		
36	argstr	arg 1	=	(1)	ind formal = phys obj	
					animate – ind.	
		Arg 2	=	(2)	Formal – phys obj.	
		Cause-		CCP		
Qualia		Formal=		Dead (e2 (2))		
		Agentive =		Kill – act (e, (1), (2)).		

Kwakhona izenzi ezingezo igathive ezinjengo-run, ukuboniswa kwentloko kulandela kulwakhiwo lwekhwaliya, kubonisiwe ku-38.

	Run					
Eventstr	=	E1	=	e,	:	Process
Qvalia	=	Agentive =	Run	– act (e, x)		

Ngokuka Pustejovsky ebhekiselela ku-Chomsky, 1951, 1980, ukongeza kuzobo nje lulodwa, utsho esithi imbonakhalo yeleksikhoni zekhwaliya kufuneka “zaneliswe”

Ngokuka Pustejovsky ebhekiselela ku-Chomsky, 1951, 1980, ukongeza kuzobo nje lulodwa, utsho esithi imbonakalo yeleksikhoi zekhwaliya kufuneka “zaneliswe” ngesintaksi. Kufuneka ibezintlobo-ntlobo kulwakhiwo lwekhwaliya emalutolikwe ngokuzeleyo kwiziphumo zolwakhiwo lwesintaksi.

39 ikwaliya eyanelisiweyo: Ulwakhiwo lwekhwaliya luyanelisa kuphela ukuba zonke ii-adyumenti zekhwaliya zigqityiwe.

40 Covered (ufezo)

I-adyumenti u-x ufeziwe kuphela ukuba:

- (i) x is linked to a position in s-structure:
- (ii) x is logically dependent on a covered argument y, or
- (iii) x is existentially closed by virtue of its type.

Kumba wezenzi ezinjengo – build, apho ibhekisele kumiselo lwesenzisa qwalasela ulwakhiwo lwekhwaliya u-build ngendlela efinyeziweyo:

		Build	
	Arg2	Artifact	
		Const =	3
		Formal =	Phys-obj
Argstr	D-arg 1	= (3) Material	
		Formal	
		Create – LCP	
Qualia	Formal	=	Exist (e2, (2))
	Agentive	=	Build – Act (e1, (1), (3))

## 2.7 IMVELISO YEZIXHOBO EZISETYENZISWAYO KWISEMANTIKI

Ngokuka-Pustejovsky, elona nqaku lesisahluko kukubona sesiphi esi sixhobo siyimfuneko ukuze senze umsebenzi weemboniso zomelo, umzekelo ulwakhiwo lwekhwaliya, ulwakhiwo lwesiganeko kunye nolwakhiwo lwe-adyumenti entlobo ezigqatyaziweyo, ukuze inkqubo yolinganiso kwinkcazelo kunye nengcaciso eyaneleyo inganeliseka yithiyori yesemantiki. Isixhobo esisetyenziswayo esinxulumene nokuziphatha konxulumano olunenkukacha ezininzi zolwimi yingqokelela yamahlelo emveliso adibanisa imigangatho



eyahlukeneyo yesemantiki yeleksikhali, anika udityaniso lotoliko lwamagama kwindawo ekuthethwa / ekubhekiselelwa kuzo. Kwaye enye into equkiweyo kule misebenzi zinguqulelo zesemantiki zonyanzelo-hlobo, ukhetho olubophelelekileyo kunye nentsebenziswano, ezi zontathu zizihloko ezizakuthi siqubisane nazo.

Kwakhona phakathi kwendibaniselwano ezisetyenziswayo zinguqulelo ezenza kusetyenziswe iintlobo zesemantiki ezingabalulwanga njengo hlobo lwendibaniselwano, uphawo lokukhuphela kunye nobalulo lwezenzi ezibuthathaka. Kwakhona enye into athe wayiphawula uPustejovsky yile, ezona ziphumo zeliqhinga zezi unxulumano olunenkukacha phakathi kwesintaksi kunye nesemantiki yenqobo zokulinganisa azinakugcinelwa yonke imigangatho yenkcazelo yesemantiki / yolwimi enoba iyanqweneleka. Le nto ithetha ukuthi ibinza lobumbo sivakalisi / lesintaksi alinakutolikwa ngaphandle kwesintaksi kunye nesemantiki yendawo ekuthethwa kuyo apho ithi ivele kwakhona.

Ngoku u-Pustejovsky ugqala ebalula unyanzelo lwezixhobo ezisetyenziswayo nokuba zisetyenziswa njani ukubonisa umelo lwesemantiki echumileyo, apha umelo lucacisa into enentsingiselo ezininzi.

### **2.7.1 Unyanzelo kunye notshintsho hlobo**

Ngokuka-Pustejovsky, xa ebhekiselela ku-Geach, 1968, Straehey, 1967, utshintsho lohlobo lwaqala lavezwa njengendlela yokuvumela abasenbenzisi abanjengesilanduli kunye nesihlanganisi, ukuba zitshintshe uhlobo ngokohlobo ezilubalulayo okanye eziluthatha njenge-adyumentu. Kwakhona ebhekisela ku-Rooth kunye no-Partee (1982), (1983), Partee (1985, Klein. Kunye no-Sag 1985, kunye no-Chierchia (1984), kumsebenzi wabo olandelayo baphuhlisa isixhobo esinokusetyenziswa ukuvumela i-NP okanye nayiphi na intetho, jikelele. Ukuba ikwazi ukutshintsha uhlobo ngokuxhomekeke kwindawo ekuthethwa kuyo. Kwaye iintlobo zoxinezelelo zinxulumana ngento athi ukuyibiza u-Partee kunye no-Rooth yilada yohlobo.

### **2.7.2 Unxulumano olunenkukacha ezinzi zeparamitriksi kunye notshintsho-hlobo**

Ngokuka-Pustejovsky, ebhekiselela ku-Partee kunye no-Rooth (1985); uxoxa enjenje, ufundo lwezihlanganisi mhlawumbi sele iyinto eyazekayo yotshintsho-hlobo kulwimi



Iwendalo kwaye ihlelwa ngokuzimeleyo njengonxulumano olunenkukacha ezininzi zeparametriks, apho u-Strachey (1967), u-Leib (1991) kunye no-Shieber 1992 bawuphatha umsebenzi wesihlanganisi njengomsebenzi othatha naluphi na uhlobo jenge-adyumenti kwaye ezileksikhali kuthiwa ziparametrix, ezinonxulumano olunenkukacha ezininzi. Qaphela oluhlelo lomzekelo lubonisa utshintsho-hlobo lunikwe ku-(1) apho umntu oyedwa, UJohn wohlobo elungelelaniswa nosoquko i-NP.

1 John and every woman arrived.

Ukucacisa umzekelo ongasentla, i-NP every women wohlobo kwaye ngokothintelo lohlobo olusemgangathweni kulungelelwaniso kule ndlela, izihlangansi mazibenjengo-hlobo apho kweminye imiba zingenjalo. Kwaye phantsi kweli cebo isivakalisi sizakubonwa njenge sibuthathaka Nangona sinobugrama. Kwaye esi sisombululo kule bhidanisi kukuphakamisa utoliko luka John kolo lokuqukanisa usokuqo njengoko kuboniswe ku-(2)

- 2 a (John) and (every woman). <<e,t>,t>  
 b Every woman: woman.  
 c John – type shifting / type shifts to

Kwakhona utshintsho-hlobo lubenomsebenzi obalulekileyo ekuqukeni indlela ezimbini ezinomahluko kugocagoco lwesemantiki njengoko izezwe / ngu-Groenendijk kunye no-stokhof (1987) kwakhona ku-Pustejovsky (1993) ukusetyenziswa kotshintsho-hlobo luxoxwe kwaye luboniswe ku-(3) ngezantsi:

3 John considers Mary a fool.

Apha ku-(3) uhlobo lwe-NP a fool lutshintshelwe kwelo lesivisa kwaye u-Mary kunye nesivisa bangadibana kumgangatho wexesha.

Uhlobo oluqatshelwayo lokhethwa njengoko luboniwe nesikhankanyi esongeziweyo ku-(5) kwaye lulo kanye oluhlobo longeziweyo lokhetho oluthi lubonise unyanzelo-hlobo: (5) John considers (Mary) (to be a fool) umtsalane wolutshintsho-hlobo ngulo, uthi unike esinye sezixhobo esifuneka ekuxinezeleni isemantiki kwisintaksi yozobo lwegrama, egameni, lokufumana unxulumano lwesemantiki phakathi kweleksikhali ezimbono-mbini: kwakhona ngokuka-Pustejovsky, enye yengxaki ezisemqoka kwisemantiki yeleksikhali



luxanduva lweleksikhali embono-mbini. Kwaye iza kubalingaku jikelele apho kufuneka iphande khona isemantiki, nalapho kwenzekayo, kuthe nobuninzi nembono-mbini zeleksikhali ezifunwa yigrama. Luninzi ulwakhiwo oluthathwe njengezenzi ezimbono-mbini, kodwa ngenyani zibolekisa ngazo lula kwingcaciso yotshintsho-hlobo.

Kwakhona ngokuka-Pustejovsky, ebhekiselela ku-Mc Cawley (1979) kunye no-Dowty (1979), uxoxa enjenje, ngokunxulumene nentlobo ezandisiweyo zezenzi u-want, njengoko kubonisiwe ku-(12)

- 12    a     John wants to have a car untill next week.  
       b     John wants a car until next week.

Ekucaciseni lo mzekelo ungentla uDowty ugqala enjenje, isihlomelo sexeshana until next week sichaza into efihlakeleyo okanye into eqonda isivisa ku-(12b) njengoko ichaza phandle isivisa ku-(12) kwakhona ebhekiselela ku-Dowty (1985), uPustejovsky uxoxa ngakwicala lesuntsu lobalo kule miba, ngoba kukho umahluko omncinci kwintsingiselo yezenzi kunye nakutoliko lwesivisa se-elipsi kumba ngamnye, ekufuneka unxulunyaniswe kwalapha kwi-leksikhali. Qwalasela umzekezo, ukuxhomekeka kwendawo ekuthethwa kuzo zesivisa se-elipsi kumzekelo ngamnye ngezantsi:

- 14    a     John wants a book (to read).  
       b     John wants a beer (to drink).  
       c     Harry wants another cigarette (to smoke).

Ngokuka-Pustejovsky, ebhekiselela ku-Sovety, utyatyadula enjenje, isisombululo kukufumana intsingiselo ebanga unxulumaniso lwamasuntsu amagama angundoqo esenzi esinjengo-wants, uvumela (ipregimantiki) fekthazi zinike ingxelo enxulumene nendawo ekuthethwa kuyo kwaye lo nto izinzisa isuntsu lesenzi kwindawo ekuthethwa kuyo. Enye ingxaki yesi sisombululo sesi eyona ndlela yokumisela unxulumano phakathi kwamasuntswana esenzi ingokubangwa kwentsingiselo nangona isanela ingcaciso. Intsingiselo ebanga isisombululo sokunxulumanisa amasuntswana ahlukeneyo ka-want, umzekelo ubonakala ulamla ngokunamandla kwaye awuthinteleki kwaye kukho iingxaki ezimbi ezingundoqo malunga nalendlela.



Eyokuqala kuyo yonke iimiba, asiyo intsingiselo yesenzi ethi itshintshe, kodwa zizinto ezikhethiweyo kwizongezelelo zezenzi. Kwakhona unxulumaniso kwintsingiselo yenziwa yintsingiselo ebangwayo hayi nangokuthintelwa zizixhobo ezisetyenziswayo. Ingxaki yesibini yile, ayiphumelelanga ukufumana ukuziphatha kwamagama antsingiselo ezininzi / ezi zandiso xa zivela kwisintaksi engenye leyo yindalo yezi zandiso / yezi zongezelelo ezinjenge-beer kunye ne-book yilento zingqina iintsingiselo ezininzi ezizimeleyo ezinjengo-want. Qwalasela udweliso lwezandiso / lwezongezelelo zezenzi u-want.

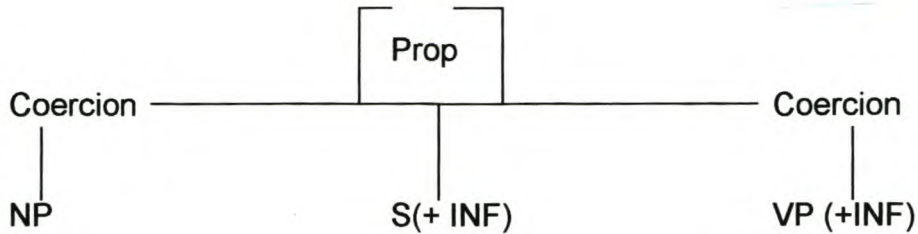
- 15     a     Mary wants John to leave (S + INF)  
          b     Mary wants to leave (NPC + INF)  
          c     Mary wants a beer (NP).

Into etshintshayo, luhlobo lwesintaksi eyongeziweyo kwisenzi ethi ivele ngotshintsho-hlobo ngenxa yolawulo lweleksikhali kwisenzi. Lo msebenzi ubizwa ngokuba-lunyanzelo-hlobo. Ngoba lulawulwa yileksikhali yotshintsho-hlobo. Ngokuka-Pustejovsky (1993) ebhekiselela ku-Cardelli kunye no-Wagner (1985) baluchaza unyanzelo ngoluhlobo lulandelayo:

- 16     Unyanzelo-hlobo! Umsebenzi wesemantiki othi uguqule i-adyumenti kuhlobo olunyanzelwe ngumsebenzi, apho izakuthi ibeneziphumo kwimpazamo yohlobo. Kwakhona ngokuka-Pustejovsky kukho izinto ezimbini ezifuna ingcaciso: eyokuqala umahluko wobume besintaksi obuvela njengentlobo zesandiso / zesongezelo kwisenzi u-want, kwakhona okwesibini, umahluko wotoliko othi uvelele isandiso se-NP umzekelo othi ubonakale ufuna amasuntswana obalo kunye nepregmantiki etyebileyo yale miba.

Noko kunokuba kucelwe umahluko wentlobo zesemantiki yesenzi, yahlula kwaye ungeni lweleksikhali enomahluko kunye nesicelo sothi uhlobo lwesenzi lushiyeke lungaguquki, apho i-adyumenti yangaphakathi kuhlobo olufanayo njenge ntetho; ukuba uhlobo lwesintaksi luvela / lubonakala kwindawo yesandiso ludibanisa oluhlobo, isiphumo solwakhiwo sakhekile. Qwalasela umthi ku-(18) ubonisa unxulumano phakathi "kohlobo olunzulu lwesemantiki" kunye nokuqondwa kwesintaksi.





Uzobo ku-(77) lubonisa amandla ohlobo olunye lwesemantiki ukuxinezela lona ngendlela ezininzi ezahlukeyo zesintaksi. Ngokwengqikelelo yezigaba zesintaksi, lento ithetha ukuthi, uxinezelo lwesintaksi alubonisi kuphela uhlobo olunye lwesemantiki, endaweni yoko ithi iquikelele uhlobo lwesemantiki ngokwendawo ekuthethwa kuyo.

### 2.7.3 Unyanzelo-hlotyana

Ngokuka-Pustejovsky, ukubonisa amagcuntswana afanelekileyo onyanzelo-hlobo, kubalulekile kuqala ukuqwalasela ukuba yintoni mhlawumbi umba olula wonyanzelo ekuqukeni olona hlobo / didi lotshintsho lwesemantiki, egameni lombha wonyanzelo-hlotyana. Qwalasela umzekezo, kwisivakalisi u-(19) ngezantsi, apho intloko kunye nenjongosenzi ye-NP zizintlotyana zohlobo olubalulweyo kwi-adyumenti yesenzi.

- 19    a     Mary drives a honda to work.  
       b     Tom read the tractatus on holiday.

Ngokuka-Pustejovsky, nangona ilinqaku lemhla nge-mihla kwisintaksi, ukwenzela iintlobo zesemantiki, omnye makenze unxulumano phakathi kohlobo oluboniswe nge-NP kwenye yezindawo ze-adyumenti kunye nohlobo olufanele ukukhethwa zizenzi u-drive kunye no-road. Kwaye unxulumano oluqhelekileyo olunikwe phakathi kwezi ntlobo lolunye lwentlotyana.

Umzekelo, ngokoqikelelo umboniso weleksikhali yesibizo, -car unikiwe ku-20

Car

Argstr

Qualia

Arg 1	=	X: vehicle
Formal	=	x
Telic	=	Brick (e, y, x)
Agentive	=	create (e, z, x)

Ngoko ngoluhlobo i-Honda njengo hlotyana lwe-car, lo mzekelo ulandelayo uladela i-Honda = Car vehicle. Qaphela ixabiso lomenzeli kunye nethelikhi ziyafumana: uhlobo lwesibali somenzeli we-Honda nokuba ichazwa jikelele.

Njengo hlotyana lwe-car, lo mzekelo ulandelayo umisela i-honda – car – vehicle. Qaphela ixabiso lomenzeli kunye nethelikhi ziyafumana: uhlobo lwesibaluli somenzeli we-honda nokuba ichazwa jikelele

#### Honda

Argstr	Arg1	=	x: Car
	Formal	=	x
	Telic	=	Drive (e, y, x)
Qualia	Agentive	=	Create (e, y, x)

Kwakhona uPustejovsky, uthlekelela ukuba, uhlobo lokhetho lwangaphakathi sisenzi kwisivakalisi u-(19a) yi-vehicle, njengoko ibonisiwe ngezantsi kumboniso weleksihali we-drive, emva koko iimfuno zokhetho zinganelisa ukuba uhlotyana lonxulumano lukho oluthi lwenze unxulumaniso lohlobo lwenjongosenzi kuhlobo lobalulo lweleksikhali.

#### Drive

	e1	=	.... Process
Eventstr	e2	=	..... Process
	Restr	=	<0 $\infty$
	Arg 1	=	x : Human
Argst	arg 2	=	y: vehicle
	Formal	=	move (e2, y)
Qualia	Agentive	=	drive-act (e, x, y)

#### ..... UNYANZELO LWESANDISO SOKWENENE

Apha uPustejovsky uxoxa, enjenje, kunonxulumano lunenkcukacha ezininzi zepharametrikhi, unyanzelo-hlobo lokwenene luquka utshintsho olungqongqo lohlobo olunye kolunye uhlobo olubalulweyo, ivunyelwa lulawulo lweleksikhali kwaye utshintsho aluzithundezi, kodwa luzinzisa uhlobo olukhoyo kwiziphumo zohlobo ngomsebenzi olungele unyanzelo qwalasela le mizekelo ingezantsi:



- 25 a Mary wants a beer.  
 Mary wants a cigarette.  
 Mary enjoyed the movie.  
 Mary enjoyed watching the movie.

- 27 a John began a book.  
 John began reading a book.  
 John began to read a book.

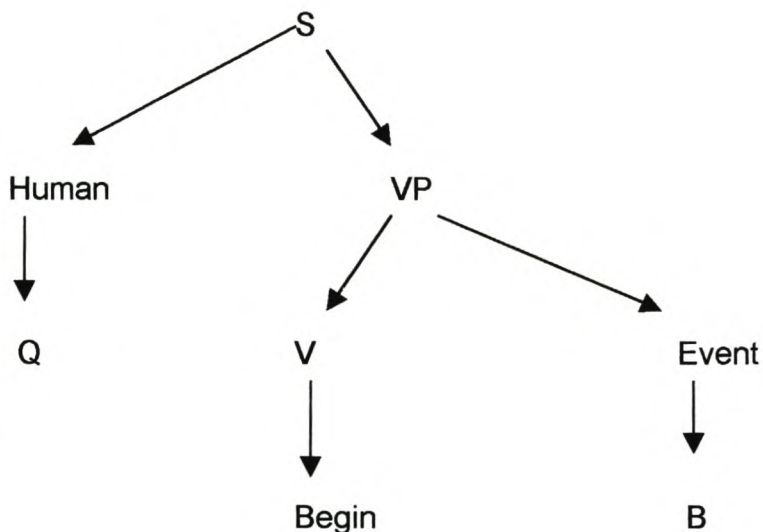
Ukuze sikwazi ukufumana unxulumano lwezintlobo zahlukeneyo zesenzi, into eza kulandela kukubiza umthetho wonyanzelo ukuqinisekisa ukuba uhlobo lwesemantiki yesenzi luyaneliseka kule miba, enokuba luhlobo lwesintaksi: kwakhona umthetho wonyanzelo wokubekheleleka komsebenzi uchaza ukuba inguqulelo zesemantiki zenza njani, zisiza njani nantoni. Ngokolwakhiwo lweleksikhali olunxulumene ne-senzi u-begin onikwe apha ngezantsi ngohlobo olungaphelelanga, uhlobo lwesibini lwe-adyumenti lunikwe ngokucacileyo njenge siganeko.

	Begin		
Eventstr	e1	=	Transition
	e2	=	Transition
	restr	=	$<0\infty$
Argstr	Arg 1	=	$x : \text{Human}$
	Arg 2	=	e2
	Formal	=	$P \ C \ e2, X$
	Agentive	=	Begin – ACT (e1, xe2)

Ngokwengxoxo ka-Pustejovsky, isandiso / isongezelelo ku-begin ngokwenyani sisiganeko sohlobo oluthile. Enokuba luhlobo oluphezulu lwesintaksi yesandiso, uhlobo lwemeko yesemantiki luyafana, egameni lesiganeko. Kwakhona apho oluhlobo lunganelisi ngqo khona njengaku-(27c) okaye (27b) lucela ukwakha isandiso sesemantiki yaye unyanzelo luthi luphumelele kuphela ukuba i-NP iyafumaneka kwi aliyasi (alias / yohlobo olufanelekileyo kumzekelo u-(27 a) uhlobo lwesiganeko luyanyanzelwa kwisanidiso u-book kwaye luvela ngokuphinda kwakhiwe isiganeko sika-reading se-NP yekhwaliya. Kwaye ulwakhiwo lweleksikhali ye-book yinjongosenzi ethe gqaba eyenza uthelekelelo kwintlobo ezimbini info kunye ne-physobj.

Book	
Argstr	Arg 1 = x : Info
	Arg 1 = y : Physobj
	Info = Physobj – LCP
	Formal = Hold (y, x)
Qualia	Telic = Read (a, w, x, y)
	Agent = Write (a, v, x, y)

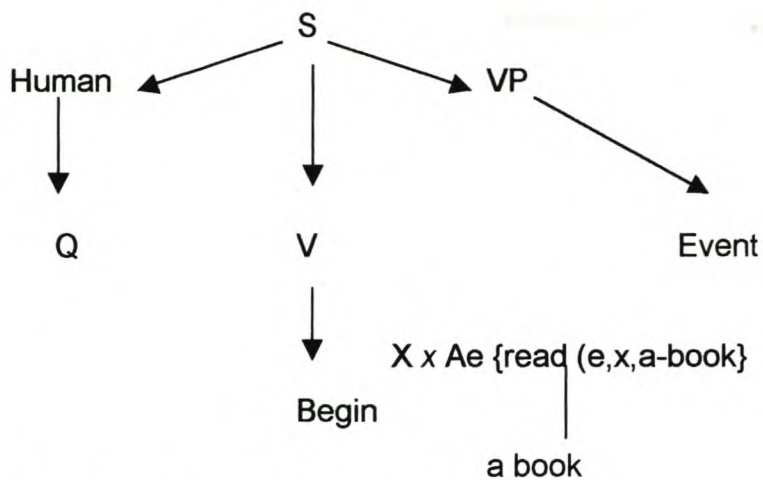
Kuba i-NP ye-book ingalwanelisi uhlobo olufunekayo sisivisa u-begin isenzi sinyanzela i-NP kumboniso wesiganeko, ethi ifumaneke kwi-NP yolwakhiwo lwekhwaliya, ngokomboniso wekhwaliya. Kwaye kukho iziganeko ezibini ezinxulunyaniswa nale-NP, zibizwa ngokuba ngamaxabiso omenzi kunye nethelikhi, zendima yekhwaliya. Qwalasela lomzobo mthi ubonakalisiweyo ngezantsi, apho iintlobo zesemantiki ziphawulwe kwizibiyeli: Ngokolwakhiwo lweleksikhali ku-(28) isenzi u-begin une-adyumententi ezimbini (human) kunye no-(event). Qwalasela umzekelo ku-(30)



Kwaye ingxelo yonyanzelo kwisandiso kulawulo lwesenzi u-begin lungabonwa lufana ukuvelisa uxinezelo lokubonisa-isiganeko, kwaye luzinzise isemantiki ye-NP kolu xinezelo.

Kwaye ke ibonisiwe ngobuchule ku-(31) apha ngezantsi:





#### 2.7.4 Udibaniselwano / indibaniselwano

Ngokuka-Pustejovsky (1991) uxoxa enjenje, eli icandelo lixoxa le miba yezenzi engokwengqiqo yentsingiselo ezininzi iquka udibaniselwano / indibaniselwano. Kwakhona kancinci nje, indibaniselwano ichaza ulwakhiwo oluthi luvumele, ngaphezu-komthetho, ngaphezulu komsebenzi omnye oveziweyo. UPustejovsky uqala ngokufunda amagama antsingiselo-ninzi oluhlu lwezenzi ukubonisa elinqaku. Qwalasela ku-(45) ngezantsi isenzi u-bake unentsingiselo ezimbini, zombini zitshintsha isuntsu lobume nesuntsu lobumbo (Atkins 1988)

- 45    a     John baked the potato.  
       b     John baked the cake.

Ngokuka-Pustejovsky (1991) ukuze sikwazi ukufumana ingqiqo entsingiselo-ninzi kule miba yonke nokuthi ivelise imfuno izintlu zamagama aphindeneyo. Kwakhona uvela esithi, izandiso zithwala ingxelo ethi yenze ulawulo lwesenzi, ithathe isenzi ngokubalulekileyo njenge a-dyumentu kwaye itshintshe nohlobo lwayo lwesiganeko. Apha esi sicelo siza kwenziwa sicace kwaye sichaze isixhobo esenza lo msebenzi ubonakalayo. Qwalasela ulwakhiwo lweleksikhali yesenzi esinje ngo-bake sinikwe apha ngezantsi:

Bake

Eventstr

E1 = e1 Process

Head = e1

Arg 1 (1) Animate = Ind

Formal = Physobj

Argstr	Arg 2 (2)	Mass		
		Formal	=	Physobj
Qualia	State =	Change – LCP		
	Agentative	= Bake –		

UPustejovsky ubanga enjenje, linye kuphela isuntsu lika – bake kwaye nezifaniso zifunyanwa ngenxa yesixhobo semveliso ngodityaniso lwe-adyumentu, yayo. Into efuna ukucaciswa, kukuba kutheni izibizo ezinje ngo-cake, bread kunye ne-cookies “tshintsha” intsingiselo ka-bake, ngelixa ezinye izibizo (ezinje ngo-potato kunye ne-garlic) zingenayo / zingatshintshi thelekelela ikhwaliya ka-cake yenza intelektelo kwixabiso lomenzeli ka-bake

	Cake			
Argstr	Arg 1	=	x: Food – ind	
	B-Arg 1	=	y: Mass	
	Const	=	y	
Qualia	Formal	=	x	
	Telic	=	eat (	
	Agentive	=	bake – out	

Qaphela le nto, umenzeli wenza uthlekelelo kwinkqubo ezinziswe kweli binza lonxulumano athi u-Pustejovsky (1991) ukulibiza (co-specification) lubalulo, kwaye isemantiki ye-VP bake a cake. Isuka kwimisebenzi emininzi. Owokuqala umsebenzi oqhelekileyo othi uthintele injongosenzi kulwakhiwo lwe-adyumentu yesenzi u-bake.

Okwesibini, ubumbano lohlobo lophawu luyenzeka, luvunyelwa ngokuchonga amaxabiso ekhwaliya yomenzezi kwisenzi kunye nakwi-adyumentu. Umsebenzi wendibaniselwano uphumela kulwakhiwo lwekhwaliya ye VP ethi ivelise imbonakalo yamalungu-ziquka:

- The governing verb bake applies to its complement.
- The complement co-specifies the verb.
- The composition of qualia structure results in a serviced sense of the verb, where the verbal and complement agentive role matched, and the complement formal quale becomes the formal role for an entire VP.



- a Isenzi esilawulayo u-bake ubhekiselela kwisandiso zakhe.
- b Kwisandiso esibalula isenzi.
- c Udityaniso lolwakhiwo lwekhwaliya luphumela kwisuntsu lemvelaphi lesenzi, apho isenzi kunye nesandiso umenzeli bengqamana, kwaye isandiso sekhwel efanayo ijika / iphinda ibeyindima efanayo / enokufana ne-VP iyonke.

UPustejovsky uphinda agqale enjenje, omabini amasuntswana amagama ezenzi angafunyanwa njengo-bake ngokuthi ubeke umyinge wesemantiki kwi-NP. Lo mbono ucebisa ukuba, kwezi meko, isenzi ngokunokwaso sinentsingiselo ezininzi: kwaye ubumbo lwesuntsu luka-bake lubenegalelo ngentsingiselo u-cake ngenxa yokuba iyinto eyenziwayo. Isenzi sivela sinentsingiselo ezininzi ngoba ezinye izandiso zongezelela kwenye intsingiselo ngendibaniselwano.

Bake a cake	
Eventstr	E1 = e1: Process
	E2 = e2: State
	Restr = L52
	Head = e1
Argstr	Arg 1 = Animate – ind Formal = Physobj Artifact
	Arg 2 = (2) Const = (3) Formal Physobj
	D-Arg (3) Material
	Formal = Mass
Qualia	Create LCP
	Formal = Exist (e2, (3))
	Agentive = Bake – act (e1, 1, 3).

Ebhekiselela ku-Talmy (1985), kunye no-Levin Rapoport (1988) uPustejovsky uxoxa enjenje, njengomnye umzekelo wokuba isebenza kanjani na indibaniselwano ukuvelisa imizekelo yeleksikhali khonflakshin owokuqala uxoxwe kwaye wachazwa lulwayamo lweleksikhali, egameni, lentsingiselo ezininzi zesenzi u-float kunye nonxulumano lwezenzi kolulwakhiwo lulandelayo:

- 54 a The bottle is floating in the river.  
b The bottle floated under the bridge.

Ukucacisa lo mzekelo ungentla, uPustejovsky uxoxa enjenje, kukho indlela yentsingiselo ezininzi eziboniswe yile mizekelo apho inkqubo etolikelwa isenzi u-float njengaku-(54a) itshintshelwe kuguqulo / kwinguqulelo ethile kwisivakalisi u-(54b) kwaye ileksikhali ekhethelwe ukubonisa isenzi inikiwe ku-(55)

	Float		
Argstr	=	{Arg 1	= (1) {Physobj}
Eventstr	=	{E1	= e,:state}
Qualia	=	{Agentive	= Float (e1, (1)))

Ku-(54b) zombini indlela kunye nentsingiselo yezinto ezihambayo zikhonflakthelwe kwisuntsu elitsha lika-float. Ku-Pustejovsky (1991) njenge misebenzi eyenza ngaphezu kwezenzi enika unyuso / uvukelo kwimvelaphi yesuntsu lwesenzi ngenxa yendibaniselwano. Kwaye uthethelelelo lukumboniso we pp into the cave unikiwe apha ngezantsi.

	Into the cave		
Argst	[Arg1	=	(1) [Physobj]
	[Arg 2	=	(2) [The cave.]
Eventstr	E1	=	e1 : Process
	E2	=	e2 : State
	Restr	=	L2
	Head	=	e2
Qualia	Formal	=	at (e <sub>3</sub> , [1], [2])
	Agentive	=	move (e1, (1))

Lo mzekelo ubonisa ukuba isibumbelo sesivisa soyame ixeshana ekusetyenzisweni kwe-PP isiphumo sodityaniso olupheleleyo luboniswe apha ngezantsi ku-(58)



## Float into the cave

Argstr	Arg 1	=	(1) Physobj
	Arg 2	=	(2) The cave
	E1	=	E1 State
	E2	=	E2 Process
Eventstr	E3	=	E3 : State
	Restr	=	L2 (e2, e3), O2 (e1, e2).
	Head	=	E3
	Formal	=	At (e3, (1) (2))
	Agentive	=	Move (e2, 1, float, e1, 1)

Kwaye eyona nto ichazwa lolu phicotho yile yokuba, isuntsu elikhonflakthiweyo lwesenzi u-float lukho kuphela ngokwebinza nangokweleksikhali. Kuphela yimisebenzi yendibaniselwano enokuthi ibonise isuntsu indawo elisuka kuyo ukubonisa olu toliko.

### 2.7.5 Ukhetho olubophelelekileyo

Ngokuka-Pustejovsky, esi sihloko siqubisana nengxaki yesiphawuli esintsingiselo ninzi. Qwalasela ezi ntlobo zintsingiselo ninzi noguquguqulo lwesiphawuli ngezantsi.

- 59    a    We will need a fast boat to get back in time.  
       b    John is a fast typist.  
       c    Fast drivers will be caught and tickited.
- 60    a    John put on a long album during dinner.  
       b    I'd like a really bright bulb for my desk.  
       c    Mary dumped the pasta into the boiling pot.
- 61    a    The man is sad.  
       b    John is a sad man.  
       c    That was truly a sad say (event, occasion).

Eqwalasela umzekelo ku-(59) u-Pustejovsky ufumana ukuba, umgangatho wombono wokhetho kwi-sel lwezi ntlobo zeziphawuli kukubala amasuntsu. Lufuna umahluko omncinci wesuntsu u-fast ibeluhlobo lehlelo lesibizo okanye uhlobo eliphawulayo.

Yaqwalwaselwa ukuba intsingiselo ka-fast imiselwa ikakhulu yintloko yesemantiki eyakhiwe nayo. Kwaye indawo yesivisa, iziphawuli ezinjengo-fast zimbono-mbini kananjalo, ziyakwazi ukuphawula i-NP's (ku-62) kananjalo njenge-NP's (ku-63 ngezantsi)

- 62    a     That was fast! Your back already.  
       b     Your dog is fast.
- 63    a     Emanuel ax's hand moved so fast during the scherzo they were a blur.  
       b     Mary was driving too fast to maintain control of the car.

Ukucacisa lo mzekelo ungentla, u-Pustejovsky ugqala enjenje, nakanjalo kwisivisa somntu ku-62, utoliko lwesibaluli lufuna intelekelelo kwisiganeko. (ku-62a) utoliko lubhekiselela kwixesha lesiganeko somntu ohambileyo, ngelixa ku-(62b) into yobu-fast xa ehamba sisivisa senja (dog). Kwaye isivakalisi ku-(63) lutoliko olusemgangathweni lwesivisa sesiganeko. Ebhekiselela ku-Bartsch, 1985, u-Pustejovsky uqwalasela enjenje, kukho imiba emibini efuna ukuxoxwa apha:

a     Iziphawuli ezinjengo-fast zinentsingiselo ezininzi ezikwaziyo ukubalula ukuzimela okanye iziganeko kunye no-b utolilko lwesiphawuli kwindawo ekuthethwa kuyo luxhomekeke kwintloko yesemantiki ngokwayo. Ngoku umbuzo ngulo, ungafikelela njani kutoliko oluku – “John is a typist” who is fast at typing?

Kuqikeleleka ukuba ulwakhiwo lwekhwaliya lwesibaluli somenzeli njenge-typist lunje ngolu lulandelayo:

Typist			
Argstr	=	[Arg 1	= x: Human
		Formal	= x
Qualia	=	Telic	= Type (e, x)]

Ukuba u-fast sisivisa sesiganeko, akukho mfuziselo usemgangathweni wendibaniselwano onokuthi uvumele utoliko lweminqweno yesivakalisi (u-59b) UPustejovsky uphinda athi, isiphawuli siyakwazi ukwenza lubonakale ukhetho lotoliko lwesiganeko oluqulathwe kwikhwaliya yentloko yesibizo. Kwaye enye into eyenza ukuba olu toliko lwenzeke sisixhobo semveliso ekubhekiselelwa kuso njengo-khetho olubophelekileyo esinye



isixhobo sotoliko kukuba-noxanduva losetyenziso lwesuntsu ukuphicotha iziphawuli ezinjengo-good njengoko esetyenzisiwe ku-67 ngezantsi:

67     a     A good knife: A knife that cuts well.  
Jonga kolu lwakhiwo lwekhwaliya lwe-knife olunikwe ku-(68)

	Knife		
Argstr	Arg 1	=	x: tool
	Formal	=	x
Qualia	Telic	=	Cut (e, x, y)

Njengoko u-good esebenza njenge siganeko sesivisa siyakwazi ukubalula ngokukhethekileyo ingcaciso yesiganeko kwikhweyil yetheliki yesibizo, iphumele kutoliko olunikwe ku-(67). Okokugqibela qwalasela ukhetho oluguqulweyo kwi-NP kwisivakalisi (u-69) ngezantsi:

69     a     John bought a long record.  
         b     A long record: A record whose playing time is long.

Ethelekelela ukuba ulwakhiwo lwekhwaliya ku-record olunikwe ku-(70) kwaye isiphawuli u-long lunotoliko ngesiganeko sesivisa, emva koko utoliko lokhetho kwisiganeko setheliki ye “The record playing: njengoko ibonisiwe (ku-71)

	Records		
Argstr	Arg 1	=	x: Physobj
	Arg 1	=	y: Info
	Info	=	Physobj = LCP
	Formal	=	RCX, Y
Qualia	Telic	=	Play (e, x, y)

## **ISAPHLUKO 3**

### **UHLALUTYO LWELEKSIKHALI YESEMANTIKI YESENZI U-BAMBA**

#### **3.1 INTSHAYELELO**

Esi sihlalo sona ikakhulu sizakuthi siqwalasele uhlalutyo lweleksikhali yesemantiki yesenzi u-bamba. Kwakhona ingqwalasela iza kuba sekubeni senza njani ukuze sikwazi ukuthabatha iintlobo zamabinza ezibizo azintloko kunye nezifizekisi zazo. Zeziphi ezi nguqulelo zithi zenzeke , kwaye kutheni le nto esisenzi singenakukwazi ukuthabatha amanye amabinza ezibizo kunye nezifizekisi ezithile. Kwakhona sizakuthi phaya ekupheleni kwaso siqwalasele amaqhalo indlela abunjwa ngayo, nokuba ayakwazi na? Ukuwamkela amanye amabinza ezibizo azintloko, kwisenzi u-bamba.

#### **3.2 UKHETHO NDAWONYE LWEBINZA LESIBIZO ESIYINTLOKO KWIZIVAKALISI EZINO-BAMBA**

Injongo yeli candelo kukuqwalasela ukhetho ndawonye lwebinza lesibizo esiyintloko kwizivakalisi ezinezenzi u-bamba, kwakunye nokuqinisekisa umahluko wamasuntswana egama u-bamba, ukuba enza njani ukuveza indibaniselwano nokuthi aqwalasele isemantiki yezifizekisi zamabinza ezibizo zika- bamba. Ukuphumeza le njongo, iindawo zolwakhiwo lwe-adyumenti kunye nolwakhiwo lwesiganeko sika-bamba siza kuhlalutywa okanye ziqwalaselwe ngokoluhlu lwesintaksi kunye nesemantiki yeendawo ekuthethwa ngayo.

#### **3.3 IBINZA LESIBIZO ESIYINTLOKO NGU- MNTU ( HUMAN)**

Kwezi zivakalisi zilandelayo zino-bamba ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko linophawu lwesemantiki u-mntu (human)

- 1 a Iqela labantu libambe isela.  
 "A group of people held a thief."  
 "A group of people held and caught a thief."
- b Ulutsha lubambe intetho ka-Mongameli.  
 Youth held the speech of the President.  
 "Youth understood the speech of the President."



- c ULizo ubambile emsebenzini.  
Lizo held job.  
"Lizo retain his work job".
- d. Umama ubambe abazukulwana ngeentsomi  
Mother caught grandchildren by folktales.  
Mother occupied the grandchildren by folktales.

Qwalasela kwezi zivakalisi zingentla u-( la-c), indima zethetha zebinza lesibizo kunye nezifizekisi zesenzi u-bamba. Kwisivakalisi u-(la) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko liqela labantu (human) eliyi-adyumentu yomenzeli (agent), kwaye isifizekisi sebinza lesenzi ikwa sisibizo u-mntu (human noun) oyi-adyumentu yexhoba (patient) Kwisivakalisi u-(1b) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko lulutsha (human) oluyi-adyumentu yexhoba (patient) kwaye isifizekisi sebinza lesenzi yinto engathethiyo (inammate), kwaye yi-adyumentu yomxholo (theme). Kwisivakalisi u-(1c) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko ngu-mntu (human) othi aveze i-adyumentu yomxholo (theme), kwaye isifizekisi sesenzi u-bamba yinto engathethiyo eyi-adyumentu yesalatha-ndawo. Kwisivakalisi u 1(d) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko ngu-mntu (human) eliyi-adyumentu yomenzeli (agent), kwaye isifizekisi sebinza lesibizo ikwa liqela labantu (human) abazukulwana (grandchildren) abayi-adyumentu yexhoba (patient), kodwa ke sona esisibizo abazukulwana (grandchildren), bathi balandelwe kwasisibizo intsomi (folktale) esinegatywa lesihlanganisi u-anga, kwaye kunyanzelekile ukuba esi sihlanganisi sikho ukuphuhlisa isivakalisi, yintoni le ababambe ngayo umama abazukulwana. Lo mahluko undawonye nendima yethetha unxulumana nomahluko weyantlukwano yesuntsu legama u-bamba, kwaye ezi zivakalisi zibonisa iintlobo ezinomahluko zesuntsu legama ukuba zenza njani ukuze zichongelwe u-bamba ngokwendawo zesintaksi kunye nesemantiki. Qwalasela ezi yantlukwano zesuntsu legama zilandelayo zichongelwe u-bamba

Umzekelo:

- 2 (i) Bamba "catch" kwisivakalisi u- (1 a).  
(ii) Bamba "understand" kwisivakalisi u- (1 b).  
(iii) Bamba "retain" kwisivakalisi u (1 c).  
(iv) Bamba "occupy" kwisivakalisi u-1(d)

Olu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo lunganikezelwa ku-bamba ngenxa yentsingiselo zakhe ezininzi kunye neyantlukwano yesuntsu legama ekuzekeliswe ngalo kwisivakalisi u- (2(i)-(iv) )

Kwisivakalisi u-(1 a) u-bamba unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo.

### 3 Bamba "catch"

i-adyumenthi 1 = umntu(human).

i-adyumenthi 2 = umntu (human).

isiganeko = isenzo/inkqubo (activity/ progress.

Kwisivakalisi u-(1 b) u-bamba unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

### 4 Bamba "understand"

i-adyumenthi 1 = umntu(human).

i-adyumenthi 2 = into engaphathekiyo (abstract).

Isiganeko = ubume (state).

Kwisivakalisi u-(1c) u-bamba unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

### 5 Bamba "retain"

i-adyumenthi 1 = umntu (human).

i-adyumenthi 2 = Isalatha-ndawo (NP) (Loc).

isiganeko = ubume (state).

### Bamba "occupy"

I-adyumenthi 1 = umntu (human)

I-adyumenthi 2 = umntu (grandchildren

I-adyumenthi 3 = igatya lesihlanganisi

(Conjunction clause)

Isiganeko = ubume (state)



### 3.4 IBINZA LESIBIZO ESIYINTLOKO SISILWANYANA (ANIMAL)

Kwezi zivakalisi zilandelayo zino-bamba ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko linophawu lwesemantiki isilwanyana (animal). Qwalasela ezi zivakalisi zilandelayo:

- 6 (a) Ikhazi libambe umtshato ungaqhubeki  
Lobola cattle held the marriage not to proceed  
"Lobola cattle delayed the marriage"
- (b) Igquba lezinja libambe umvundla  
Pack of dogs held the rabbit  
"Pack of dogs caught the rabbit"

Qwalasela kwezi zivakalisi zingentla u-( 6 a-b) indima zethetha zebinza lesibizo kunye nezifizekisi zebinza lesenzi u-bamba. Kwisivakalisi u- (6a) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko sisilwanyana (animal) esiyi-adyumentu yomxholo (theme), ngokufanayo naku- (6b), kodwa izifizekisi zona zahlukile, isifizekisi sebinza lesenzi yinto engathethiyo umtshato (inanimate)oyi-adyumentu yomxholo (theme), kanti isifizekisi sesivakalisi u-(6b) sisibizo umvundla (animal) oyi-adyumentu yexhoba(patient). Lo mahluko undawonye wendima yethetha unxulumana nomahluko weyantlukwano yesuntsu legama u-bamba, kwaye ezi zivakalisi zibonisa iintlobo ezinomahluko zesuntsu legama ukuba zenza njani ukuze zichongelwe u-bamba ngokwendawo zesintaksi kunye nesemantiki. Qwalasela eziyantlukwano zesuntsu legama zilandelayo zichongelwe u-bamba.

Umzekelo:

- 7 (i) Bamba (delay) kwisivakalisi u-(6a).  
(ii) Bamba (catch) kwisivakalisi u-(6b).

Olu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo lunganikezelwa ku- bamba ngenxa yentsingiselo zakhe ezininzi kunye neyantlukwano yesuntsu legama ekuzekeliwe ngalo kwisivakalisi u-(6a-b)

Kwisivakalisi u-(6a) u-bamba unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

#### 8 Bamba ( delay).

i-adyumentu 1 = isilwanyana (animal)

i-adyument	2	=	into engaphathekiyo (abstract)
i-adyument	3	=	igatya lesilanduli (negative clause)
isiganeko		=	ubume (state)

Kwisivakalisi u-(6b) u-bamba unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

## 9 **Bamba (catch)**

i-adyument	1	=	isilwanyana( animal).
i-adyument	2	=	isilwanyana (animal).
isiganeko		=	impumelelo (accomplishment).

## 3.5 **IBINZA LESIBIZO ESIYINTLOKO ZIZINTO ZENDALO "UMHLABA' (NATURAL PHENOMENA)**

Kwezi zivakalisi zilandelayo zino-bamba ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko linophawu lwesemantiki ngezinto zendalo "umhlaba' (natural phenomena). Kwaye eli binza lesibizo ngezinto zendalo linezihlokwana eziliqela nazo ke zizakuthi zivezwe apha ngezantsi. Qwalasela le mizekelo ilandelayo:

### 3.5.1

- 10 a Ubhedu oluqhawulweyo lubambe oololiwe ixesha elide.  
Broker copper held the trains for a longer time.  
"Broker copper delayed the trains for a long time."
- b Induli yaseMtata ibambe bu-ntaba.  
The hill of Umtata holds as a mountain.  
"The hill of Umtata is like a mountain."
- c Iintaba zaseKapa zibambe okwezokhahlamba.  
Mountains of Cape held as of Drakensberg mountains.  
"Mountains of the Cape are similar to those of Drakensberg."
- d U mlambo l Gqili ubambe amasela akakwazi ukuwela  
"Lit" The Nciba river caught the thieves"  
The Nciba river prevented the thieves from crossing it.



Qwalasela kwezi zivakalisi zingentla u-(10a-b) indima zethetha zebinza lesibizo kunye nezifizekisi zezenzi u-bamba kwisivakalisi u-(11 a) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko sisibizo ubhedu into engathethiyo (inanimate) oluthi lubonise i-adyumenthi yomxholo (theme), kwaye isifizekisi sebinza lesenzi sisibizo intaba. Esi sibizo sithi sithathe u-(bu) osisimaphambili sehlelo (14) ,kwaye unyanzelekile sivele nesibizo esisifizekisi sika-bamba u-intaba uphuhlisa utolikeko lofaniso. Kwisivakalisi u-(10c) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko sisibizo intaba (inanimate) ethi iveze i-adyumenthi yomxholo (theme) kwaye isifizekisi sesenzi ngu- ezokhahlamba (inanimate) esi sifizekisi sesenzi sithim sibe nelungu lolinganiso u- (okwa) ukuphuhlisa utolikeko lwelungu lolinganiso. Kwisivakalisi u 10 d ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko sisibizo umlambo (inanimate) esithi sibonise I – adyumenthi yexhoba (patient) othi alandelwe ligatya lesilanduli u – (aka) ukuphuhlisa utoliko lolwandulo. Lo mahluko undawonye nendima yethetha unxulumana nomahluko weyantlukwano yesuntsu legama u-bamba, kwaye ezi zivakalisi zibonisa iintlobo ezinomahluko zesuntsu legama ukuba zenza njani ukuze zichongelwe u-bamba.

Umzekelo:

- 11 (i) Bamba "delay" kwisivakalisi u-(10 a).  
 (ii) Bamba "similarity" kwisivakalisi u-( 10b-c).  
 (iii) Bamba "prevent" kwisivakalisi u (10 d)

Olu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo lunganikezelwa ku-bamba ngenxa yeentsingiselo zakhe ezininzi kunye neyantlukwano yesuntsu legama ekuzekeliswe ngalo kwisivakalisi u-(10 a-d)

Kwisivakalisi u-(10a) u-bamba unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

## 12 Bamba "delay"

i-adyumenthi 1	=	into engaphathekiyo (physical object)
i-adyumenthi 2	=	isithuthi (inanimate)
i-adyumenthi 3	=	ixesha (mood)
Isiganeko	=	ubume (state)

Kwisivakalisi u- (10b )u-bamba unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

**13 Bamba "similar"**

i-adyumenthi 1	=	isibizo (noun)
i-adyumenthi 2	=	isibizo esinehlelo (14) noun class 14
Isiganeko	=	ubume (state)

**14 Bamba "similar"**

i-adyumenthi 1	=	isibizo (noun)
i-adyumenthi 2	=	isibizo esinombekwa phambili
u-okwa (noun with prepositional phrase)		
Isiganeko	=	ubume (state)

**15 Bamba "prevent"**

I – adyumenthi 1	=	isibizo umlambo (river)
I – adyumenthi 2	=	umntu (human)
I – adyumenthi 3	=	igatya lolandulo u aka
		(negative clause)
Isiganeko	=	ubume (state)

**3.5.2 Ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko ngokwesibhaka-bhaka (sky)**

- 15 a Imbalela ibambile ezilalini.  
Drought is holding in rural areas.  
"Drought is persisting /proceeding in rural areas."
- b Umbethe ubambe ukufuma.  
Dew is holding the moisture.  
"Dew is retaining the moisture."
- c Izulu libambe amadoda akahamba.  
Heavy storms held the man not to go.  
"Heavy storms delayed the men."

Qwalasela kwezi zivakalisi zingentla u-(15a-c) indima zethetha zebinza lesibizo esiyintloko kunye nesifezekisi zesenzi u-bamba. Kwisivakalisi u-(15a) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko yimbalela into engaphathekiyo (abstract) eyi-adyumenthi yomxholo (theme) kwaye



isifezekisi sebinza lesenzi ngu-ezilalini (place) oyi- adyumenthi yesalathandawo. Kwisivakalisi u-(15b) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko ngu-mbethe (inanimate) othi uveze i-adyumenthi yomenzeli (agent) kwaye isifezekisi sebinza lesenzi sisenzi ukufuma (inanimate) esi-adyumenthi yomxholo (theme) Lo mahluko undawonye wendima yethetha inxulumana nomahluko weyantlukwano yesuntsu legama u-bamba, kwaye ezi zivakalisi zibonisa iintlobo ezinomahluko zesuntsu legama ukuba zenza njani ukuze zichongelwe u-bamba ngokwendawo zesintaksi kunye nesemantiki. Qwalasela ezi yantlukwano zesuntsu legama zilandelayo zichongelwe u-bamba .

Umzekelo:

16 (i) Bamba "persist" kwisivakalisi u- (15 a) .

(ii) Bamba "retain" kwisivakalisi u- (15 b).

(iii) Bamba "delay" kwisivakalisi u- (15 c).

Olu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo lunganikezelwa ku-bamba ngenxa yeentsingiselo zakhe ezininzi kunye neyantlukwano yesuntsu legama ekuzekeliswe ngalo kwisivakalisi u-(15 a-c).

Kwisivakalisi u-(15 a) u-bamba unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

### **17 Bamba "persist"**

i-adyumenthi 1 = into engaphathekiyo (abstract noun).

i-adyumenthi 2 = indawo ((NPLOC).

isiganeko = isenzo (activity).

Kwisivakalisi u-(15b) u-bamba unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

Bamba "persist"

### **Bamba "retain"**

i-adyumenthi 1 = into engaphathekiyo (concrete).

i-adyumenti 2	=	Isenzi (verb).
isiganeko	=	ubume (state).

Kwisivakalisi u-(15b) u-bamba unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

### 19 Bamba "delay"

i-adyumenti 1	=	into engaphathekiyo (abstract).
i-adyumenti 2	=	isibizo umntu (human).
i-adyumenti 3	igatya lesilanduli (negative clause).	
isiganeko	=	ubume (state).

### 3.6 IBINZA LESIBIZO ESIYINTLOKO ZIZINTO EZIBUNJWAYO (artifacts)

Kwezi zivakalisi zilandelayo zino-bamba ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko linophawu lwesemantiki izinto ezibunjwayo (artifacts), kwaye zahlula-hluliwe ngokwendlela ezibunjwa ngazo. Qwalasela ezi zivakalisi ziza kulandela:

#### 3.6.1 Ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko sisithuthi (vehicle)

20 a Inqanawa ibambe iintlanzi (ezininzi).

The ship held many fish.

"The ship caught a huge number of fish."

b Imoto yam ibambe bu- Benz.

My car held like Benz.

"My car is like a Benz."

c. Ibhayisekile yakhe ibambe busithuthuthu

His bicycle hold like motorbike

His bicycle is like a motorbike/ similar to a motorbike.

Qwalasela kwezi zivakalisi zingentla indima zethetha zebinza lesibizo esiyintloko kunye nesifezekisi sesenzi u-bamba. Kwisivakalisi u-(20a-c) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko sisibizo inqanawa(inanimate) eyi-adyumenti yomxholo (theme) kananjalo naku-(21b) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko sisibizo imoto (inanimate) esithi siveze i-adyumenti yomxholo



(theme). Umahluko kwizifizekisi zamabinza ezenzi, ku(20a) ziintlanzi eziyi-adyumentu yexhoba (patient), ukanti ku(20 b) sisithuthi / imoto eveza i-adyumentu yofaniso (similarity). Qwalasela oku esi sibizo imoto sithi sithathe u-bu osisimaphambili sehlelo (14), kwaye kunyanzelekile /kufanelekile avele nesibizo esisifizekisi sika-bamba ukuphuhlisa utolikeko lofaniso. Kwisivakalisi u 20 © ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko yibhayisekile (inanimate) eyi adyumentu yomxholo (theme). Isifizekisi sebinza lesenzi sisithuthuthu esithi siveze I – adyumentu yofaniso (similarity), esi sibizo isithuthuthu sithi sithabathe u – bu osisimaphambili sehlelo 14, kwaye kunyanzelekile kuba sifana ngqwa no 20 b. Lo mahluko undawonye wendima yethetha unxulumana nomahluko weyantlukwano yesuntsu legama u-bamba kwaye ezi zivakalisi zibonisa iintlobo ezinomahluko zesuntsu legama ukuba zenza njani ukuze zichongelwe u-bamba ngokwendawo zesintaksi kunye nesemantiki. Qwalasela eziyantlukwano zesuntsu legama zilandelayo zichongelwe u-bamba.

Umzekelo:

- 21 (i) Bamba "catch" kwisivakalisi u-(20 a).  
 (ii) Bamba "similar" kwisivakalisi u-(20 b).  
 (iii) Bamba "similar" kwisivakalisi u (20 c)

Olu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo lunganikezelwa ku-bamba ngenxa yeentsingiselo zakhe ezininzi kunye neyantlukwano yesuntsu legama ekuzekeliswe ngalo kwisivakalisi u-(20a-c)

Kwisivakalisi u-(20 a) u-bamba unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

## 22 Bamba "catch"

i-adyumentu 1	=	isithuthi samanzi (animate).
i-adyumentu 2	=	isilwanyana samanzi (inanimate).
isiganeko	=	isenzo (activity).

Kwisivakalisi u-(20b) u-bamba unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

## 23 Bamba "similar"

i-dyumentu 1 = isithuthi.

i-adyumentu 2 = isithuthi sofaniso esino-bu wehlelo (14) (inanimate).

Isiganeko = ubume (state).

Kwisivakalisi u 20 c ubamba unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

## 24. Bamba "similar"

I –adyumentu 1 = isithuthi

I adyumentu 2 = isithuthi sofaniso esino-bu wehlelo 14 (inanimate)

Isiganeko = ubume (state)

### 3.6.2 Ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko butywala (liquid)

25 a Ibranti ibambe abafana.

Brandy held the young men.

"Brandy controlled the young men."

b Ibhiya iwabambile amakhwenkwe.

Beer held the young men.

"Beer delayed the boys."

c Iwayini ibambe bubhiya.

Wine held like beer

"Wine is like a beer"

Qwalasela kwezi zivakalisi zingentla u-(25 a-c) indima zethetha zebinza lesibizo esiyintloko kunye nezifizekisi zesenzi u-bamba. Kwisivakalisi u-(25 a) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko sisiselo (brandy inanimate) esi-adyumentu yomxholo (theme) kuyafana naku-(25b-c) isibizo esiyintloko sisiselo. Umahluko kwezi zivakalisi ukwizifizekisi. U-(25 a) uthi athathe isifizekisi sebinza lesenzi umntu (human) oyi-adyumentu yexhoba (patient) U-(24 c) wahlukile kwaphela kwezi zivakalisi zingentla uthi athathe isifizekisi sebinza lesenzi esi siselo (liquid) esi sibizo sithi sithathe u-(bu) osisimaphambili sehlelo (14), kwaye kufanelekile avele nesibizo esisifizekisi sika-bamba i-bhiya ukuphuhlisa utolikeko lofaniso.



Lo mahluko undawonye wendima yethetha unxulumana nomahluko weyantlukwano yesuntsu legama u-bamba, kwaye ezi zivakalisi zibonisa iintlobo ezinomahluko zesuntsu legama ukuba zenza njani ukuze zichongelwe u-bamba ngokwendawo zesintaksi kunye nesemantiki. Qwalasela ezi yantlukwano zesuntsu legama zilandelayo zichongelwe u-bamba.

Umzekelo:

26 (i) Bamba "control" kwisivakalisi u-(25 a).

(ii) Bamba "delay" kwisivakalisi u- (25 b).

(iii) Bamba "similar" kwisivakalisi u- (25 c).

Olu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo lunganikezelwa ku-bamba ngenxa yeentsingiselo zakhe ezininzi kunye neyantlukwano yesuntsu legama ekuzekeliswe ngalo kwisivakalisi u-(245a-c).

Kwisivakalisi u-(25a) u-bamba unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

## 27 Bamba "control"

i-adyumenthi 1	=	isiselo (liquid).
i-adyumenthi 2	=	umntu (human).
isiganeko	=	isenzo (activity).

Kwisivakalisi u-(25b) u-bamba unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

## 28 Bamba "delay"

i-adyumenthi 1	=	isiselo (liquid).
i-adyumenthi 2	=	umntu (human).
isiganeko	=	ubume (state).

Kwisivakalisi u-(25c) u-bamba unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

## 29 **Bamba "similar"**

i-adyumentu 1	=	isiselo (liquid)
i-adyumentu 2	=	sisiselo (liquid)
isiganeko	=	ubume (state)

### 3.6.3 Ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko sisakhiwo (building)

Qwalasela ezi zakalisi zilandelayo:

#### 30 Isakhiwo sendlu yakhe sibambe bu-hositela

His house plan held as a hostel

"His house plan is like a hostel"

#### b Uphahla lwendlu yakhe lubambe okomqolo wofudo

The roof of his house held as a shell of a tortoise

"The roof of his house held as a shell of a tortoise"

Qwalasela kwezi zivakalisi zingentla u-23 a-b indima zethetha zebinza lesibizo esiyintloko kunye nezifizekisi zesenzi u-bamba. Kwisivakalisi u-(30c) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko sisakhiwo (inanimate material) eyi-adyumentu yomxholo (theme) kwananjalo naku-(30b). Umahluko ukwisifizekisi, qwalasela ku-(30a) isifizekisi sisibizo i-hostela esi sakhiwo kodwa sithi sithathe u-bu osisimaphambili sehlelo (14), kwaye kufanelekile avele nesibizo esisifizekisi sika-bamba ukuphuhlisa utolikeko lofaniso, kwaye esi sifizekisi sikwavoza i-adyumentu yomxholo (theme). Kwisivakalisi u-(30b) isifizekisi sesibizo ngu-okomqolo wofudo (animal), esi sifizekisi sithi sibe nelungu lolinganiso u-(okwa) ukuphuhlisa utolikeko lwelungu lolinganiso.

Lo mahluko undawonye wendima yethetha unxulumana nomahluko weyantlukwano yosuntu logama u-bamba, kwaye ezi zivakalisi zibonisa iintlobo ezinomahluko zesuntu logama ukuba zenza njani ukuze zichongolwe u-bamba ngokwendawo zosintakisi kunye nosomantlali. Qwalasela ezi yantlukwano yosuntu logama zilandelayo zichongolwe u-bamba.

Umzekelo:



- 31 (i) Bamba "similar" kwisivakalisi u-(30a).  
 (ii) Bamba "compare" kwisivakalisi u- (30b).

Olu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo lunganikezelwa ku-bamba ngenxa yeentsingiselo zakhe ezininzi kunye neyantlukwano yesuntsu legama ekuzekeliswe ngalo kwisivakalisi u-(30a-b).

Kwisivakalisi u-(30 a) u-bamba unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

### 33 Bamba "similar"

i-adyumenti 1	=	isakhiwo (material /inanimate).
i-adyumenti 2	=	isakhiwo (inanimate).
i-adyumenti 3	=	ufaniso (similarity).
isiganeko	=	ubume (state).

Kwisivakalisi u-(30 b) u-bamba unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

### 33 Bamba "compare"

i-adyumenti 1	=	isakhiwo (inanimate).
i-adyumenti 2	=	isilwanyana (animal).
i-adyumenti 3	=	ulinganiso (comperative element).
isiganeko	=	ubume (state).

## 3.7 IBINZA LESIBIZO ESIYINTLOKO ZEZEMIDLALO (SPORT AND GAME ACT, ACTIVITY)

Kwezi zivakalisi zilandelayo zino-bamba ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko linophawu lwesemantiki ezemidlalo (sport and game) (act, activity). Qwalasela ezi zivakalisi zilandelayo:

- 34 a Ibhola ekhatywayo ibambe abantwana phezolo (abaya esikolweni).  
 Soccer game held the children yesterday.

"Soccer game delayed the children yesterday."

b Indoloty ibambe uSisa imini yonke.

Ndoloty held Sisa the whole day.

"Ndoloty delayed Sisa the whole day."

Qwalasela kwezi zivakalisi zingentla u-(34a-b)indima zethetha zebinza lesibizo esiyintloko kunye nesifezekisi zesenzi u-bamba. Kwisivakalisi u-(34a) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko yibhola (inanimate) eyi-adyumentu yomxholo (theme) ukanti isifezekisi sebinza lesenzi sisibizo abantwana (human) esiveza i-adyumentu yexhoba (patient). Kwisivakalisi u-(34b) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko ngumdlalo we-ndoloty (inanimate/game) oyi-adyumentu yomxholo (theme), ukanti isifezekisi zesenzi umntu (human) oyi adyumentu yexhoba (patient).

Lo mahluko undawonye wendima yethetha unxulumana nomahluko weyantlukwano yesuntsu legama u-bamba, kwaye ezi zivakalisi zibonisa iintlobo ezinomahluko zesuntsu legama ukuba zenza njani ukuze zichongelwe u-bamba ngokwendawo zesintaksi kunye nesemantiki. Qwalasela eziyantlukwano zesuntsu legama zilandelayo zichongelwe u-bamba.

Umzekelo:

34 (i) kunye, (ii) bamba "delay"

Olu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo lunganikezelwa ku-bamba ngenxa yeentsingiselo zakhe ezininzi kunye neyantlukwano yesuntsu legama ekunikezelwe ngalo kwisivakalisi u-(34a-b).

Kwisivakalisi u-(34a) u-bamba unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

### 35 Bamba "delay"

i-adyumentu 1	=	umdlalo (inanimate).
i-adyumentu 2	=	abantwana (human).
i-adyumentu 3	=	igatya lesilanduli (negative clause).
isiganeko	=	isenzo (activity).



Kwisivakalisi u-(34 b) u-bamba unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

### 36 Bamba "delay"

i-adyumenthi 1	=	umdlalo (inanimate)
i-adyumenthi 2	=	umntu (human)
isiganeko	=	isenzo (activity)

### 3.8 IBINZA LESIBIZO ESIYINTLOKO YIMO YOKUNGAPHILI (state illness)

Kwezi zivakalisi zino-bamba ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko linophawu lwesemantiki imo yokungaphili (state illness). Qwalasela ezi zivakalisi zilandelayo:

- 37 a Umbefu umbambile umakhulu  
Asthma held grandmother.  
Asthma caught grandmother badly."
- b Idumbe ibambe abaseli betyhontyi.  
Epilepsy held drinkers.  
"Wine drinkers are caught by epilepsy."
- c Isifo sephepha sibambile eNtshona Koloni.  
Cholera held in the Western Cape.  
"Cholera is persisting in the Western Cape"

Qwalasela kwezi zivakalisi zingentla u-(37a-c) indima zethetha zebinza lesibizo esiyintloko kunye nezifizekisi zesenzi u-bamba kwisivakalisi u-(37a) ibinza lesibizo sisigulo (state illness animate) eyi-adyumenthi yomxholo (theme, ukanti isifizekisi sebinza lesibizo ngabantu (human) abayi-adyumenthi yexhoba (patient). Kwisivakalisi u-(37b) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko sisigulo (state illness animate) esiyi-adyumenthi yomxholo (theme), kanti isifizekisi sebinza lesenzi yindawo (inanimate) eveza i-adyumenthi yomxholo (theme).

Lo mahluko undawonye wendima yethetha unxulumana nomahluko weyantlukwano yesuntsu legama u-bamba, kwaye ezi zivakalisi zibonisa iintlobo ezinomahluko zesuntsu legama ukuba zenza njani ukuze zichongelwe u-bamba ngokwendawo zesintaksi kunye nesemantiki. Qwalasela ezi yantlukwano zesuntsu legama zilandelayo zichongelwe u-bamba.

Umzekelo:

38(i) Kunye, (ii) bamba 'catch'

(iii) Bamba , 'persist'

Olu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo lunganikezelwa ku-bamba ngenxa yeentsingiselo zakhe ezininzi kunye neyantlukwano yesuntsu legama ekunikezelwe ngalo kwisivakalisi u-(37a-c).

Kwisivakalisi u-(37a) u-bamba unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

### 39 Bamba 'catch'

i-adyumentu 1 = isigulo (animate)

i-adyumentu 2 = umntu (human)

i-adyumentu 3 = ubume (state)

Kwisivakalisi u-(37b) u-bamba unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

### 40 Bamba 'catch'

i-adyumentu 1 = isigulo (animate).

i-adyumentu 2 = umntu (human).

isiganeko = ubume (state).

Kwisivakalisi u-(37c) u-bamba unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

### 41 Bamba 'persist'

i-adyumentu 1 = isigulo(animate).

i-adyumentu 2 = indawo (place).

i-adyumentu 3 = ubume (state).



### 3.9 IBINZA LESIBIZO ESIYINTLOKO SIBONISA ISIGANEKO (event)

Kwezi zivakalisi zilandelayo zino-bamba ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko linophawu lwesemantiki isiganeko (inanimate). Qwalasela ezi zivakalisi zilandelayo:

42 a Uvuno lusibambile kule nyanga.

Harvest held us in this month.

'Harvest kept us busy in this month.'

b Upheko lwenkobe lusibambile kwaye lusilibazisile.

'Cooking of boiled-maize delayed us.'

Qwalasela kwezi zivakalisi zingentla u-(42 a-c) indima zethetha zebinza lesibizo esiyintloko kunye nesifezekisi zesenzi u-bamba. Kwisivakalisi u-(42a) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko sisiganeko (event / inanimate) esiyi-adyumenti yomxholo (theme), kanti sona isifezekisi lesenzi sisalathisi sokuqala esiyi-adyumenti yebinzana lexesha (TP). Kwisivakalisi u-(43b) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko sisiganeko (event) esiyi-adyumenti yomxholo (theme), ukanti sona isifezekisi libinzana lesenzi elibonisa umxholo (theme).

Lo mahluko undawonye wendima yethetha unxulumana nomahluko weyantlukwano yesuntsu legama u-bamba, kwaye ezi zivakalisi zibonisa iintlobo ezinomahluko zesuntsu legama ukuba zenza njani ukuze zichongelwe u-bamba ngokwendawo zesintaksi kunye nesemantiki : Qwalasela ezi yantlukwano zesuntsu legama zilandelayo zichongelwe u-bamba.

Umzekelo

43 (i) Bamba 'keep.'

(ii) Bamba "delay."

Olu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo lunganikezelwa ku-bamba ngenxa yeentsingiselo zakhe ezininzi kunye neyantlukwano yesuntsu legama ekunikezelwe ngalo kwisivakalisi u-(43a-b).

Kwisivakalisi u-(42a) u-bamba unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

**44     Bamba 'delay'**

i-adyumenthi 1	=	isiganeko (event).
i-adyumenthi 2	=	ibinza lexesha(tense phrase).
i-adyumenthi	=	isiganeko (activity).

Kwisivakalisi u-(43 b) u-bamba unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lwesemantiki lulandelayo:

**45     Bamba 'delay'**

i-adyumenthi 1	=	isiganeko (event /inanimate).
i-adyumenthi 2	=	isihlanganisi (preposition).
i-adyumenthi 3	=	ibinza lesenzi (verb phrase).
isiganeko	=	isenzo (activity).

### **3.10 IBINZA LESIBIZO ESIYINTLOKO LULWIMI LWENGINGQI KUNYE NENKCUBEKO (society, language, culture)**

Kwezi zivakalisi zilandelayo zino-bamba ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko linophawu lwesemantiki ulwimi lwengingqi, kunye nenkcubeko (inanimate).

- 46     (a)     Uduli lubambe umthetho.  
               Bride-side held the rule.  
               'People of the bride-side maintained the rules.'
- (b)     Usosuthu ubambe umkhonto.  
                     Sosuthu is holding an assegai.

Qwalasela kwezi zivakalisi zingentla u-(46a-b) indima zethetha zebinza lesibizo esiyintloko kunye nesifezekisi zesenzi u-bamba. Kwisivakalisi u-(46a) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko liqela labantu (human) eliyi-adyumenthi yomenzeli (agent), sona isifezekisi sebinza lesenzi ngu-mthetho (inanimate) oyi-adyumenthi yomxholo (theme). Kwisivakalisi u-(46 b) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko ngu-mntu (human) oyi-adyumenthi yomenzeli (agent), ukanti sona isifezekisi ngu-mkhonto (inanimate) oyi-adyumenthi yomxholo (theme).



Lo mahluko undawonye wendima yethetha unxulumana nomahluko weyantlukwano yesuntsu legama u-bamba, kwaye ezi zivakalisi zibonisa iintlobo ezinomahluko zesuntsu legama ukuba zenza njani ukuze zichongelwe u-bamba ngokwendawo zesintaksi kunye nesemantiki. Qwalasela ezi yantlukwano zesuntsu legama zilandelayo zichongelwe u-bamba.

Umzekelo:

- 47 i) Bamba 'maintain'  
(ii) Bamba 'hold'

Olu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo lunganikezelwa ku-bamba ngenxa yeentsingiselo zakhe ezininzi kunye neyantlukwano yesuntsu legama ekunikezelwe ngalo kwisivakalisi u-(46a-b). Kwisivakalisi u-(46a) u-bamba unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

#### 48 Bamba 'maintain'

- i-adyumenthi 1 = iqela labantu(human).  
i-adyumenthi 2 = into engathethiyo (abstract).  
isiganeko = ubume (state).

Kwisivakalisi u-(46b) u-bamba unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

#### 49 Bamba 'hold'

- i-adyumenthi 1 = umntu(human).  
i-adyumenthi 2 = isixhobo (tool).  
isiganeko = ubume (state).

### 3.10.1 Ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko lunxibelelwano (communication)

Kwezi zivakalisi zilandelayo zino-bamba ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko linophawu lwesemantiki unxibelelwano (communication). Qwalasela ezi zivakalisi zilandelayo:

50 a Umyalezo kasisi ubambe umntwana (akahamba).

The massage of a sister held the child not to go.

"The message from sister delayed the child from leaving."

b Incoko kaZola ibambe abantu abaninzi.

'Conversation of Zola held many people.'

"Lizo's conversation trapped many people."

c Intsomi kamakhulu ibambe bubali lenene.

Folktale of grandmother held as a true story.

"Grandmother's folktale seems as if it's a true story."

Qwalasela kwezi zivakalisi zingentla u-(50a-c) indima zethetha zebinza lesibizo esiyintloko kunye nesifezekisi zesenzi u-bamba. Kwisivakalisi u-(50a) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko ngumyalezo (inanimate) oyi-adyumentu yomxholo(theme), kanti ke sona isifezekisi sebinza lesenzi abantwana (human) esiyi-adyumentu yexhoba (patient), kodwa esi sibizo abantwana sithi silandelwe ligatya lesilanduli esinokuthi maxa wambi noba asikho kungabikho ngxaki. Kwisivakalisi u-(50c) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko yi-ntsomi (inanimate) eyi-adyumentu yomxholo, sona isifezekisi libali. Esi sibizo sithi sithathe u-(bu) osisimaphambili sehlelo (14), kwaye kunyanzelekile sivele nesibizo esisisekisi sika-bamba.

Lo mahluko undawonye wendima yethetha unxulumana nomahluko weyantlukwano yesuntsu legama u-bamba, kwaye ezi zivakalisi zibonisa iintlobo ezinomahluko zesuntsu legama ukuba zenza njani ukuze zichongelwe u-bamba ngokwendawo zesintaksi kunye nesemantiki. Qwalasela ezi yantlukwano zesuntsu legama zilandelayo zichongelwe u-bamba.

Umzekelo:

51 'Bamba'

(i) Bamba 'delay'.

(ii) Bamba 'trap'.

(iii) Bamba 'similar'.

Olu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo lunganikezelwa ku-bamba ngenxa yeentsingiselo zakhe ezininzi kunye neyantlukwano yesuntsu legama ekuzekeliswe ngalo kwisivakalisi u-(50 a-c).

Kwisivakalisi u-(50a) ubamba unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:



**52     Bamba 'delay'**

i-adyumentu 1	=	into engaphathekiyo(abstract).
i-adyumentu 2	=	umntu (human).
i-adyumentu 3	=	igatya lesilanduli(negative clause).
Isiganeko	=	ubume(state).

Kwisivakalisi u-(50b) u-bamba unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

**53     Bamba 'trap'**

i-adyumentu 1	=	into engaphathekiyo(abstract).
i-adyumentu 2	=	umntu (human).
isiganeko	=	ubume (state).

Kwisivakalisi u-(50c) u-bamba unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

**54     Bamba 'similar'**

i-adyumentu 1	=	into engaphathekiyo(abstract).
i-adyumentu 2	=	isibizo esi nesimaphambili sehlelo (14).
isiganeko	=	ubume (state).

**3.10.2 Ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko lcebiso (advice)**

Kwezi zivakalisi zilandelayo zino-bamba ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko linophawu lwesemantiki icebiso (advise). Qwalasela ezi zivakalisi zilandelayo:

**55 (a) Umyalelo weNkosi ubambe amadoda amaninzi.**

The order of the King held many men.

"The order of the King arrested a number of men."

(b) Icebo lokubamba amasela silifumene.

The advice of holding the thieves we got it.

"We have got the advice of catching the thieves"

Qwalasela kwezi zivakalisi zingentla u-(55a-b) indima zethetha zebinza zesenzi u-bamba. Kwisivakalisi u-(55a) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko ngu-myalelo (inanimate) oyi-adyumentu yomxholo (theme), kanti sona isifezekisi sebinza lesenzi ngabantu abayi-adyumentu yexhoba (patient). Kwisivakalisi u-(55b) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko licebo (inanimate) eliyi-adyumentu yomxholo(theme), kanti sona isifezekisi sebinza lesibizo ngumntu (human) oyi-adyumentu yexhoba (patient).

Lo mahluko undawonye wendima yethetha unxulumana nomahluko weyantlukwano yesuntsu legama u-bamba.kwaye ezi zivakalisi zibonisa iintlobo ezinomahluko zesuntsu legama ukuba zenza njani ukuze zichongelwe u-bamba ngokwendawo zesintaksi kunye nesemantiki. Qwalasela ezi yantlukwano zesuntsu legama zilandelayo zichongelwe u-bamba.

#### Umzekelo:

#### 56 'Bamba'

- (i) Bamba 'arrest' kwisivakalisi u-(55a).
- (ii) Bamba 'catch' kwisivakalisi u- (55b).

Olu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo lunganikezelwa ku-bamba ngenxa yeentsingiselo zakhe ezininzi kunye neyantlukwano yesuntsu legama ekuzekeliswe ngalo kwisivakalisi u-(55 a-b).

Kwisivakalisi u-(55a) u-bamba unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

#### 57 Bamba 'arrest'

i-adyumentu 1	=	into engaphathekiyo (abstract).
i-adyumentu2	=	abantu(human).
Isiganeko	=	ubume (state).

Kwisivakalisi u-(55b) u-bamba unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:



**58     Bamba 'catch'**

i-adyumentu 1	=	into engaphathekiyo (abstract).
i-adyumentu 2	=	umntu(human).
Isiganeko	=	ubume (state).

**3.11 IBINZA LESIBIZO ESIYINTLOKO SISIBIZO SESALATHA-NDAWO (LOCATIVE NOUN)**

Kwezi zivakalisi zilandelayo zino-bamba ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko linophawu lwesemantiki isalatha-ndawo (locative nouns). Qwalasela esi sivakalisi silandelayo:

**59 a** EKapa kubambe uRhulumente wethutyana.

Cape Town is held by a government of a short period.

"Cape Town is governed by the interim government."

Qwalasela kwesi sivakalisi singentla u-(59a) indima zethetha zebinza lesibizo esiyintloko kunye nesifezekisi sesenzi u-bamba. Kwesi sivakalisi singentla u-(59a) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko sisalatha-ndawo (locative noun) esiyi-adyumentu yomxholo (theme), kanti ke isifezekisi sebinza lesenzi ngu-Rhulumente ongumenzeli (agent).

Lo mahluko undawonye wendima yethetha unxulunyaniswa nomahluko weyantlukwano yesuntsu legama u-bamba, kwaye esi sivakalisi sibonisa uhlobo olunomahluko wesuntsu legama ukuba lenza njani ukuze lichongelwe u-bamba ngokwendawo yesintaksi kunye nesemantiki.

**Umzekelo:****60     Bamba 'govern'**

(i) Bamba 'govern' kwisivakalisi u- (59 a).

Olu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo lunganikezelwa ku-bamba ngenxa yentsingiselo yakhe eninzi ku-(59a). Kwesi sivakalisi u-(59a) u-bamba unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

**61     Bamba 'govern'**

i-adyumentu 1	=	isalatha-ndawo(locative noun).
i-adyumentu 2	=	umntu (human).
isiganeko	=	ubume (state).

### 3.12 IBINZA LESIBIZO ESIYINTLOKO SISIBIZO SEHLELO LENDAWO (LOCATIVE CLASS NOUN)

Kwesi sivakalisi silandelayo sino-bamba ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko sisibizo sehlelo lendawo (locative class noun). Qwalasela esi sivakalisi silandelayo:

62 a Emva kweholo kubambe amajoni ucwangco.

Lit Behind the hall soldiers held peace.

"Behind the hall soldiers are maintaining peace."

Qwalasela kwesi sivakalisi singentla u-(62a) indima yethetha yebinza lesibizo esiyintloko kunye nesifizekisi sesenzi u-bamba. Kwesi sivakalisi ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko sisibizo sehlelo lendawo (locative class noun) esiyi –adyumentu yomxholo (theme), kanti sona isifizekisi sebinza lesenzi ngabantu (human) abayi-adyumentu yomenzeli (agent).

Esi sivakalisi sibonisa uhlobo olunomahluko wesuntsu legama ukuba lenza njani ukuze lichongelwe u-bamba ngokwendawo zesintaksi kunye nesemantiki.

#### Umzekelo:

#### **Bamba 'maintain'**

63 (i) Bamba 'maintain' kwisivakalisi u- (62 a)

Olu melo lulandelayo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lunganikezelwa ku-bamba ngenxa yeentsingiselo zakhe ezininzi.

Kwesi sivakalisi u-(62a) u-bamba unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

#### **Bamba 'maintain'**

i-adyumentu 1	=	isibizo sehlelo lendawo (locative class noun).
---------------	---	--



- i-adyumenthi 2 = abantu (human).  
 isiganeko = ubume (state).  
 Icandelo lezivakalisi zamaqhalo (idiomatic sentences).

### **AMAQHALO AKHIWE KWISENZI U-BAMBA**

Eli candelo lizakuthi lijongane nezivakalisi zamaqhalo anesenzi u-bamba. Kwakhona ekugqibeleni lizakuthi likuvezele indlela elahluke ngalo kumanye amacandelo.

Qwalasela ezizivakalisi zilandelayo:

2. UPiwe ubambe elentulo.  
 Lit Piwe is catching tail of a wild cat. i.e  
 Piwe believes the first words of people.

Kwesi sivakalisi singentla ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko ngu-mntu (human), kwaye isifezekisi siliwanyane (animal). Esi sivakalisi sinolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

- I-adyumenthi 1 = NP umntu (human)  
 I-adyumenthi 2 = Intulo (animal)  
 Isiganeko = ubume (state)

3. Usisi ubambe inyoka emsileni  
 She holds the snake by tail.  
 She provoked a wrong person.

Kwesi sivakalisi singentla ibinza lesibizo esinyintloko ngu-mntu (human) kwaye isifezekisi inyoka (animal) kunye no-emisileni (tail) indawo (NP) kwakhona esi sivakalisi sinolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

- I-adyumenthi 1 = NP umntu (human)  
 I-adyumenthi 2 = NP inyoka (animal)  
 II-adyumenthi 3 = Emsileni indawo (NP loc)  
 Isiganeko = isenzo (activity)

- 3 Utata ubambe intlwa isavela ngeempondo, (father holds intlwa while it came with horn) (father acted before time).

Kwesi sivakalisi ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko ngu-mntu (human) kwaye isifezekisi sisilwanyana. Kwakhona esi sivakalisi sinolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

I-adyumenthi 1	=	NP umntu (human)
I-adyumenthi 2	=	NP isilwanyana (animal)
I-adyumenthi 3	=	isavela ngeempondo igatya eliqhubekayo (portable clause)
Isiganeko	=	isenzo (activity)

#### 4 Ulizo ubambe iliwa

Lit Lizo hold the cliff, i.e.

He is waiting for something that will not come / happen.

Kwesi sivakalisi singentla ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko ngu-mntu (human). Kwaye isifezekisi sebinza lesenzi liliwa (inanimate). Kwakhona esi sivakalisi sinolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

I-adyumenthi 1	=	NP Umntu (human)
I-adyumenthi 2	=	NP iliwa (inanimate)
Isiganeko	=	Isenzo (activity)

#### 5 Ulizo uyibambe emsileni incoko

Lizo held the tail of a conversation.

Lizo heard the end-point of the conversation.

Kwesi sivakalisi singentla ibinza lesibiza esiyintloko ngu-mntu (human), kwaye isifezekisi emsileni (tail) (NP Loc) kunye nencoko (abstract). Kwakhona esi sivakalisi sinolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

I-adyumenthi 1	=	NP umntu (human)
I-adyumenthi 2	=	NP emsileni indawo (NP loc)
I-adyumenthi 3	=	NP incoko (abstract)
Isiganeko	=	isenzo (activity)

#### 6 Umntu wonke wayebambe amazinyo (ukuthetha kwakhe).

Everybody was holding teeth while he/she was speaking.



Everybody was afraid while he was speaking.

Kwesi sivakalisi singentla ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko ngu-mntu (human), kwaye isifezekisi amazinyo (inanimate). Kwakhona esi sivakalisi sinolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

I-adyumenthi 1 = NP umntu (human).  
 I-adyumenthi 2 = NP amazinyo (animate).  
 Isiganeko = isenzo (activity).

7 Usisa ubambe ibhatyi (kula msebenzi).  
 Sisa is holding a jacket in that work.  
 He is acting on behalf of someone.

Kwesi sivakalisi singentla ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko ngu-mntu (human), kwaye isifezekisi sebinza lesenzi yibhatyi (inanimate). Kwakhona esi sivakalisi sinolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

I-adyumenthi 1 = NP(Human).  
 I-adyumenthi 2 = NP ibhatyi (inanimate).  
 Isiganeko = isenzo (activity).

8 UOdwa ubambe isidima.  
 Odwa held dignity.  
 Odwa is acting as a dignified man.

Kwesi sivakalisi singentla ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko ngu-mntu (human, kwaye isifezekisi sebinza lesenzi sisidima (abstract). Kwakhona esi sivakalisi sinolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

I-adyumenthi 1 = NP umntu (human).  
 I-adyumenthi 2 = NP isidima (abstract).  
 Isiganeko = ubume (state).

9 Uthe ubamba intshontsho kanti yincede.

He said he is holding a chicken all of a sudden but is a small bird.

He chases things that are far from him.

Kwesi sivakalisi singentla ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko ngu-mntu (human) kwaye isifezekisi yintaka, intshontsho kunye nencede (animate fly).

Kwaye esi sivakilisi sinolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

I-adyumenthi 1 = NP umntu (human).

I-adyumenthi 2 = NP intshontsho (animate fly).

I-adyumenthi 3 = igatya lodibaniso / lohlanganisa (kanti, yincede) (conjunct clause).

Isiganeko = isenzo (activity).

10 Ulizo uyibambe itshisa.

Lizo held it while burning.

He acted upon immediately.

Kwesi sivakalisi singentla ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko ngu-mntu (human), kwaye isifezekisi sebinza lesenzi itshisa (inanimate) lo u-(yi) ka uyibambi itshisa ngokwalapha ubhekiselele encokweni okanye kulo mcimbi. Kwakhona esi sivakalisi sinolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

I-adyumenthi 1 = NP umntu (human).

I-adyumenthi 2 = itshisa igatya eliqhubekayo (participial clause).

Isiganeko = isenzo (activity).

11 Utata uyibambe isavela ngeempondo.

Father holds it while it come with horns.

He acted before time.

Kwesi sivakalisi singentla ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko ngu-mntu (human), kwaye isifezekisi sebinza lesenzi yintlwa (animal). Isizathu soko kukuba u-(yi) ka uyibambe umele esi silwanyana siyintlwa sihlala emnguxunyeni

I-adyumenthi 1 = NP umntu (human).



I-adyumenthi 2	=	NP intlwa (animal).
I-adyumenthi 3	=	Isavela ngeempondo (igatya eliqhubekayo (participial clause).
Isiganeko	=	Isenzo (activity).

12 Umama ubambe isisila sehobe.

Mother is holding the tail of a dove.

She is waiting something that will not come / happen.

Kwesi sivakalisi singentla ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko ngu-mntu (human), kwaye isifezekisi sebinza lesenzi sisisila (inanima). Kwakhona esi sivakalisi sinolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

I-adyumenthi 1	=	NP Umntu (human).
I-adyumenthi 2	=	NP isisila (indawo) (NP loc).
I-adyumenthi 3	=	sehobe (possessive noun).
Isiganeko	=	isenzo (activity).

13. Niza kuthi amahashe ayakhaba, kanti niwabamba ngomsila.

Lit. You will say horses are kicking, all along you hold them by tail.

You will say people are cruel, all along you provoke them"

Kwesi sivakalisi singentla ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko sibhekiselele ebantwini ukutsho oko ngu-mntu (human), oyi-adyumenthi yomenzeli (agent) kwaye isifezekisi sebinza lesenzi ligatya lesihlomelo u – anga, othi aphuhlise eyona ntsingiselo yesivakalisi, kuba la mahashe kuthethwa ngawo ayakhukunyezwa awungethi ulibambe ngomsila ulindele ukukhatywa. Esi sivakalisi sinolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

Umzekelo:

I – adyumenthi 1 = NP umntu (human)

I – adyumenthi 2 = ngumsila inanimate onegatya lesihlomelo u – anga.

Isiganeko = isenzo (activity)

14. Umama ubambe igazi

Lit Mother holds the blood

"she is shy"

kwesi sivakalisi singentla ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko ngu –mntu (human) oyi-adyumentu yomenzeli (agent), kwaye isifezekisi sebinza lesenzi ligazi blood esiyi – adyumentu yomxholo. Kwakhona esi sivakalisi sinolumelo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

umzekelo:

I – adyumentu 1 = umntu (human)

I – adyumentu 2 = igazi (mass noun)

Isiganeko = isenzo (activity)

15. Amadoda abambe inkunzi ebhankini

Lit Men caught the bull in the bank

“Men robbed the cash at the bank”

kwesi sivakalisi singentla ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko ngu-mntu (human), oyi-adyumentu yomenzeli (agent), kwaye isifezekisi sebinza lesenzi sisilwanyana inkunzi (animal) esithi silandelwe sisalatha-ndawo ebhankini (NP Loc) Esi sivakalisi sinolumelo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

umzekelo:

I – adyumentu 1 = ngumntu (human)

I – adyumentu 2= sisilwanyana (animal)

I – adyumentu 3 = ebhankini indawo (NPLOC)

Isiganeko = isenzo (activity)

Ukuqukumbela eli candelo lamaqhalo eyona nto ibalulekileyo kukubonisa ukuba amaqhalo ahlukile kwezinye intetha, kwaye kunyanzelekile ukuba ulisebenzise njengoko linjalo kuba alitshintshi, umzekelo esi sivakalisi siku-(12) awukwazi ukusitshintsha esa sisila esehobe tail isisila sexhalanga (eagle) okanye sentloko nje kufuneko nazi ukuba ntaka ni leyo. Kwakhona akholisa ukusebenzisa umntu (human) njenge sibizo esiyintloko.



## ISAHLUKO SESINE

### UHLALUTYO LWELEKSIKHALI YESEMANTIKI YESENZI U-GCINA

#### 4.1 INTSHAYELELO

Esi sahluko sona ikakhulu sizakuthi siqwalasele uhlalutyo lweleksikhali yesemantiki yesenzi u-bamba. Kwakhona inqgwalasela iza kuba sekubeni senza njani ukuze sikwazi ukuthabatha iintlobo zamabinza ezibizo azintloko kunye nezifizekisi zazo. Zeziphi ezi nguqululelo zithi zenzeke, kwaye kutheni le nto esisenzi singenakukwazi ukuthabatha amanye amabinza ezibizo kunye nezifizekisi ezithile. Kwakhona sizakuthi phaya ekupheleni kwaso siqwalasele amaqhalo indlela abunjwa ngayo, nokuba ayakwazi na? Ukuwamkela amanye amabinza ezibizo azintloko, kwisenzi u –bamba.

#### 4.2 UKHETHO NDAWONYE LWEBINZA LESIBIZO ESIYINTLOKO KWISIVAKALISI ESINO-GCINA

Injongo yeli candelo kukuqwalasela ukhetho ndawonye lwebinza lesibizo esiyintloko kwizivakalisi ezino-gcina, kwakunye nokuqinisekisa umahluko wamasuntswana egama u-gcina, ukuba enza njani ukuveza indibaniselwano nokuthi aqwalasele isemantiki yesifizekisi zamabinza ezibizo zika-gcina. Ukuphumeza le njongo, iindawo zolwakhiwo lwe-adyumentu kunye nolwakhiwo lwesiganeko sika-gcina ziza kuhlalutywa okanye ziqwalaselwe ngokoluhlu lwesintaksi kunye nesemantiki yeendawo ekuthethwa kuzo.

##### 4.2.1 Ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko ngu-mntu (human)

- 1 a Iqela labantu ligcine isithembiso.  
Group of people kept the promise.
- b Iqela labantu ligcine amasiko.  
Group of people kept the custom.  
"Group of people are still maintaining their customs."
- c Ikomiti igcine ixesha lentlanganiso.  
Committee is keeping the time of the meeting.  
"The committee is managing the time of the meeting."

Qwalasela kwezi zivakalisi zingentla u-(1a-c) indima zethetha zebinza lesibizo kunye nesifezekisi zesenzi u-gcina. Kwisivakalisi u-(1a) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko liqela labantu (human) eliyi-adyumentu yomenzeli (agent), kwaye isifezekisi sebinza lesenzi yinto engaphathekiyo (abstract) eyi-adyumentu yomxholo (theme). Kwisivakalisi u-(1b) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko ikwa-liqela labantu (human) eliyi-adyumentu yomenzeli (agent), kwaye sona isifezekisi sebinza lesenzi ikwa yinto engaphathekiyo (abstract) eyi-adyumentu yomxholo (theme). Kwisivakalisi u-(1c) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko ikwaliqela labantu (ikomiti) (group of human) eliyi-adyumentu yomenzeli (agent), sona isifezekisi yintlanganiso ethi iveze i-adyumentu yexhoba (patient).

Lo mahluko undawonye wendima yethetha unxulumana nomahluko weyantlukwano yesuntsu legama u-gcina, kwaye ezi zivakalisi zibonisa iintlobo ezinomahluko zesuntsu legama ukuba zenza njani ukuze zichongelwe u-gcina ngokwendawo zesintaksi kunye nesemantiki.

Qwalasela ezi yantlukwano zesuntsu legama zilandelayo zichongelwe u-gcina.

### Umzekelo:

- 2 (i) Gcina "keep" kwisivakalisi u-(1a).
- (ii) Gcina "maintain" kwisivakalisi u-(1b).
- (iii) Gcina "manage" kwisivakalisi u-(1c).

Olu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo lunganikezelwa ku-gcina ngenxa yeentsingiselo zakhe ezininzi kunye neyantlukwano yesuntsu legama ekuzekeliswe ngalo kwisivakalisi u-(1a-c) Kwisivakalisi u-(1a) u-gcina unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

### 3 Gcina 'keep'

i-dyumentu 1	=	iqela labantu (group of people).
i-adyumentu 2	=	into engaphathekiyo(abstract).
isiganeko	=	ubume (state).

Kwisivakalisi u-(1b) u-gcina unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo.



#### 4 Gcina 'maintain'

i-adyumentu 1=iqela labantu (group of people).

i-adyumentu 2=into engaphathekiyo (abstract).

isiganeko =ubume (state).

Kwisivakalisi u-(1c) u-gcina unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

#### 5 Gcina 'manage'

i-adyumentu 1=yikomiti (group of people).

i-adyumentu 2 =into engaphathekiyo (abstract).

isiganeko = ubume (state).

#### 4.2.2 Ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko sisilwanyana (animal)

Kwezi zivakalisi zilandelayo zino-gcina ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko linophawu lwesemantiki isilwanyana (animal).

6 a Ikhazi ligcine abatshana.

Lobola cattle kept the nephews.

"Lobola cattle maintained the nephews."

b Umhlambi wenkomo ugcine usapho lusempilweni.

"Herd of cattle kept the family healthy."

c Ibubu leenyosi ligcine ubusi .

A swarm of bees kept the honey.

"A swarm of bees protected it's honey."

Qwalasela kwezi zivakalisi zingentla u-(6 a-c) indima zethetha zebinza lesibizo kunye nezifizekisi zesenzi u-gcina. Kwisivakalisi u (6.a) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko sisilwanyana (animal / animate) esiyi-adyumentu yomxholo (theme), sona isifizekisi sebinza lesenzi ngu-mntu (human) oyi-adyumentu yexhoba (patient) umenzelwa. Kwisivakalisi u-(6b) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko nakhona sisinambuzane (animal) esiyi-adyumentu yomxholo (theme), kwaye isifizekisi sebinza lesenzi bubusi (inanimate) obuyi-adyumentu yomxholo (theme).

Lo mahluko undawonye wendima yetheha unxulumana nomahluko weyantlukwano yesuntsu legama u-gcina, kwaye ezi zivakalisi zibonisa iintlobo ezinomahluko zesuntsu legama ukuba zenza njani ukuze zichongelwe u-gcina ngokwendawo zesintaksi kunye nesemantiki. Qwalasela ezi yantlukwano zesuntsu legama zilandelayo zichongelwe u-gcina.

### Umzekelo:

- 7 (i) Gcina 'maintain' kwisivakalisi u-(6a).  
 (ii) Gcina 'keep' kwisivakalisi u- (6b).  
 (iii) Gcina 'protect' kwisivakalisi u-(6c).

Olu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo lunganikezelwa ku-gcina ngenxa yentsingiselo zakhe ezininzi kunye neyantlukwano yesuntsu legama ekuzekeliswe ngalo kwisivakalisi u-(6a-c).

Kwisivakalisi u-(6a) u-gcina unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

### 8 Gcina 'maintain'

i-adyumentu 1	=	isilwanyana (animal).
i-adyumentu 2	=	umntu (human).
isiganeko	=	inzuzo (achievement).

Kwisivakalisi 6 b u-gcina unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

### 9. Gcina 'keep'

i-adyumentu 1	=	isilwanyana (animal).
i-adyumentu 2	=	umntu (human).
isiganeko	=	ubume (state).

Kwisivakalisi u-(6c) u-gcina unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:



**Gcina 'protect'**

i-adyumenthi 1	=	isilwanyana (animal).
i-adyumenthi 2	=	ubusi (concrete).
isiganeko	=	ubume (state).

**4.2.3 Ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko zizinto zendalo (natural phenomena)**

Kwezi zivakalisi zilandelayo zino-gcina ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko linophawu lwesemantiki nge-zinto zendalo (natural phenomena). Kwaye eli binza lesibizo ngezinto zendalo linezihlokwana eziliqela nazo ke zizakuthi zivezwe apha ngezantsi. Qwalasela le mizekelo ilandelayo:

10 a Umlambo umBashe ugcine iingwenya zikaRhulumente.

Mbashe river kept the crocodiles of the state.

"Mbashe river protected the crocodiles of the state.

b Imbola igcina ulusu luluhle.

Red-oak keeps the skin beautiful.

"Red-oak leave the skin look good.

c Umthombo ugcina amanzi ecocekile.

Fountain keeps the water clean.

"Fountain maintains the water clean."

Qwalasela kwezi zivakalisi zingentla u-(10 a-c) indima zethetha zebinza lesibizo kunye nesifezekisi zesenzi u-gcina. Kwisivakalisi u-(10 a) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko ngu-mlambo (inanimate) oyi-adyumenthi yomxholo (theme), sona isifezekisi sebinza lesenzi sisilwanyana (animate) esilixhoba (patient). Kwisivakalisi u-(10 b) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko sisibizo yimbola (inanimate) oyi-adyumenthi yomxholo (theme), kwaye sona isifezekisi sebinza lesenzi lulusu (inanimate) oluyi-adyumenthi yexhoba (patient) Kwisivakalisi u-(10 c) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko ngu-mthombo (inanimate) oyi-adyumenthi yomxholo (theme), sona isifezekisi sebinza lesenzi nga-manzi (inanimate) ayi-adyumenthi yomxholo (theme). Lo mahluko undawonye wendima yethetha unxulumana nomahluko weyantlukwano yesuntsu legama u-gcina, kwaye ezi zivakalisi zibonisa iintlobo ezinomahluko wesuntsu legama ukuba zenza njani ukuze zichongelwe u-gcina ngokwendawo zesintaksi kunye

nesemantiki. Qwalasela eziyantlukwano zesuntsu legama zilandelayo zichongelwe u-gcina.

### 11. Umzekelo:

- (i) Gcina 'protect' kwisivakalisi u-(10 a).
- (ii) Gcina 'leave' kwisivakalisi u- (10 b).
- (iii) Gcina 'mantain' kwisivakalisi u- (10 c).

Olu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo lunganikezelwa ku-gcina ngenxa yeentsingiselo zakhe ezininzi kunye neyantlukwano zesuntsu legama ekuzekeliswe ngalo kwisivakalisi u-(10 a-c).

Kwisivakalisi u- (10 a) u-gcina unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

### 12 Gcina 'protect'

i-adyumentu 1=umlambo (into engaphathekiyo).

i-adyumentu 2= isilwanyana (animal).

isiganeko =ubume (state).

Kwisivakalisi u-(10 b) u-gcina unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

### 13 Gcina 'leave' protect

i-adyumentu 1 = imbola (into engaphathekiyo) abstract

i-adyumentu 2 = ulusu (into engaphathekiyo ) abstract

isiganeko = ubume (state)

Kwisivakalisi u-(10 c) u-gcina unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:



## **14 Gcina maintain**

i-adyumenthi 1	=	umthombo (into engaphathekiyo) abstract
i-adyumenthi 2	=	amanzi (into engaphathekiyo) abstract
isiganeko	=	ubume (state)

### **4.2.4 Ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko ngokwesibhaka-bhaka (sky)**

Kwezi zivakalisi zilandelayo zino-gcina ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko lino-phawu lwesemantiki ngokwesibhaka-bhaka (sky).

- 15 a Ilanga lehlobo ligcina abantu ngezindlu.  
 "Summer sun keep people around their houses."  
 b Umbethe ugcina ingca inyelekile.  
 Dew keeps grass succulent."

Qwalasela kwezi zivakalisi zingentla u-(15 a-c) indima zethetha zebinza lesibizo kunye nezifizekisi zesenzi u-gcina. Kwisivakalisi u-(15 a) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko lilanga (inanimate), eliyi-adyumenthi yomxholo (theme) kwaye isifizekisi sebinza lesenzi sona ngu-mntu (human) oyi-adyumenthi yexhoba (patient). Kwisivakalisi u-(15 b) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko ngu-mbethe (inanimate) oyi-adyumenthi yomxholo (theme) kwaye isifizekisi sebinza lesenzi sona ikwa ngumxholo (theme).

Lo mahluko undawonye wendima yethetha unxulumana nomahluko weyantlukwano yesuntsu legama u-gcina, kwaye ezi zivakalisi zibonisa iintlobo ezinomahluko zesuntsu legama ukuba zenza njani ukuze zichongelwe u-gcina ngokwendawo zesintaksi kunye nesemantiki. Qwalasela ezi yantlukwano zesuntsu legama zilandelayo zichongelwe u-gcina.

## **16. Umzekelo:**

- (ii) Gcina 'keep' kwisivakalisi u-(15.a).
- (iii) Gcina 'maintain' kwisivakalisi u-(15.b).

Olu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo lunganikezelwa ku-gcina ngenxa yeentsingiselo zakhe ezininzi kunye neyantlukwano yesuntsu legama ekuzekeliswe ngalo kwisivakalisi u-(15.a-b).

Kwisivakalisi u-(15 a) u-gcina unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

### **17 Gcina 'keep'**

i-dyumentu 1	=	ilanga (into engaphathekiyo) abstract.
i-adyumentu 2	=	umntu(human).
Isiganeko	=	ubume (state).

Kwisivakalisi u-(15 b) u-gcina unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

### **18 Gcina maintain**

i-adyumentu 1	=	Umbethe (into engaphathekiyo) abstract.
i-adyumentu 2	=	ingca (into engaphathekiyo) abstract.
isiganeko	=	ubume (state).

## **4.2.5 Ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko zizinto ezibunjwayo (artifacts)**

3.4.1 Kwezi zivakalisi zilandelayo zino-gcina ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko linophawu lesemantiki lwezinto ezibunjwayo (artifacts).

- 19 (a) Isitovu sigcine ubushushu.  
 "The stove kept the heat."  
 (b) Ibhotile igcine amanzi .  
 The bottle kept water.  
 "The bottle contains water."

Qwalasela kwezi zivakalisi zingentla u-(19 a-b) indima zethetha zebinza lesibizo kunye nesifezekisi zesenzi u-gcina.Kwisivakalisi u-(19 a) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko sisitovu



(inanimate) esi-adyumentu yomxholo (theme), kwaye isifezekisi sebinza lesenzi bubushushu (theme) into engaphathekiyo. Kwisivakalisi u-(19 b) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko yibhotile (inanimate) eyi-adyumentu yomxholo (theme), kwaye isifezekisi sebinza lesenzi nga-manzi (inanimate) into engaphathekiyo oyi-adyumentu yomxholo (theme).

Lo mahluko undawonye wendima yethetha unxulumana nomahluko weyantlukwano yesuntsu legama u-gcina, kwaye ezi zivakalisi zibonisa iintlobo ezinomahluko zesuntsu legama ukuba zenza njani ukuze zichongelwe u-gcina ngokwendawo zesintaksi kunye nesemantiki. Qwalasela ezi yantlukwano zesuntsu legama zilandelayo zichongelwe u-gcina.

### **Umzekelo:**

- (i) Gcina 'keep' kwisivakalisi u- (19 a).
- (ii) Gcina 'contain' kwisivakalisi u-(19 b).

Olu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo lunganikezelwa ku-gcina ngenxa yeentsingiselo zakhe ezininzi kunye neyantlukwano yesuntsu legama ekunikezelwe ngalo kwisivakalisi u-(19 a-b).

Kwisivakalisi u-(19 a) u-gcina unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

### **21 Gcina 'keep'**

i-adyumentu 1	=	isitovu (into engaphathekiyo) abstract.
i-adyumentu 2	=	ubushushu (into engaphathekiyo) abstract.
isiganeko	=	isenzo (activity).

Kwisivakalisi u-(19b) u-gcina unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

## **22 Gcina 'contain'**

i-adyumenthi 1	=	ibhotile (into engaphathekiyo) abstract.
i-adyumenthi 2	=	amanzi (into engaphathekiyo) concrete.
isiganeko	=	ubume (state).

### **4.2.6 binza lesibizo esiyintloko sisithuthi (vehicle)**

Kwezi zivakalisi zilandelayo zino-gcina ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko sisithuthi (vehicle).

- 23 a Inqanawe igcina intlanzi ezilotyiweyo.  
 "The ship is keeping fishes that are fished."  
 b Ibhayisekile igcina imali ingasebenziseki.  
 The bicycle keeps the money.  
 "The bicycle saves the money."

Qwalasela kwezi zivakalisi zingentla u-(23 a-b) indima zethetha zebinza lesibizo kunye nesifezekisi zesenzi u-gcina. Kwisivakalisi u-(23 a) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko yinqanawe (inanimate) eyi-adyumenthi yomxholo (theme), kwaye isifezekisi sebinza lesenzi ziintlanzi (animals) eziyi -adyumenthi yexhoba (patient). Kwisivakalisi u-(23 b) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko yibhayisekile (inanimate) eyi-adyumenthi yomxholo (theme). Kwaye isifezekisi sebinza lesenzi yi-mali (abstract)

Lo mahluko undawonye wendima yethetha unxulumana nomahluko weyantlukwano yesuntsu legama u-gcina, kwaye ezi zivakalisi zibonisa iintlobo ezinomahluko zesuntsu legama ukuba zenza njani ukuze zichongelwe u-gcina ngokwendawo zesintaksi kunye nesemantiki. Qwalasela ezi yantlukwano zesuntsu legama zilandelayo zichongelwe u-gcina.

## **24 Umzekelo:**

- (i) Gcina 'keep' kwisivakalisi u- (23 a).
- (ii) Gcina 'save' kwisivakalisi u- (23 b).



Olu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo lunganikezelwa ku-gcina ngenxa yeentsingiselo zakhe ezininzi kunye neyantlukwano yesuntsu legama ekunikezelwe ngalo kwisivakalisi u-(23 a-b).

Kwisivakalisi u-(23 a) u-gcina unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo.

## **25 Gcina 'keep'**

i-adyumentu 1 = inqanawe (vehicle).

i-adyumentu 2 = iintlanzi (animals).

isiganeko = ubume (state).

Kwisivakalisi u-(23 b) u-gcina unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo.

## **26. Gcina 'save'**

i-adyumentu 1 = ibhayisekile(vehicle).

i-adyumentu 2 = imali (into engaphathekiyo) abstract.

Isiganeko = ubume (state).

### **4.2.7 Ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko bubumnini (possession property)**

27 (a) Intsimi yam igcine iinkomo zam.

"My plough field kept my cattle."

(b)Imfuyo yam igcine usapho lwam.

Livestock kept my family.

"My family is maintained by my livestock."

Qwalasela kwezi zivakalisi zingentla u-(27 a-b) indima zethetha zebinza lesibizo kunye nesifezekisi zesenzi u-gcina kwisivakalisi u-(27 a) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko yintsimi (inanimate) oyi-adyumentu yomxholo (theme), kunye nesifezekisi sebinza lesenzi iinkomo (animals) eziyi-adyumentu yomamkeli (beneficiary). Kwisivakalisi u-(27 b) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko zizilwanyana (animals) eziyi-adyumentu yomxholo (theme), kwaye isifezekisi sebinza lesenzi ngabantu (human) abayi-adyumentu yomamkeli (beneficiary).

Lo mahluko undawonye wendima yethetha unxulumana nomahluko weyantlukwano yesuntsu legama u-gcina, kwaye ezi zivakalisi zibonisa iintlobo ezinomahluko zesuntsu legama ukuba zenza njani ukuze zichongelwe u-gcina ngokwendawo zesintaksi kunye nesemantiki. Qwalasela ezi yantlukwano zesuntsu legama zilandelayo zichongelwe u-gcina.

## **28. Umzekelo:**

- (i) Gcina 'keep' kwisivakalisi u- (27 a).
- (ii) Gcina 'mantain' kwisivakalisi u (27 b).

Olu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo linganikezelwa ku-gcina ngenxa yeentsingiselo zakhe ezininzi kunye neyantlukwano yesuntsu legama ekuzekeliswe ngalo kwisivakalisi u-(27 a-b). Kwisivakalisi u-(27 a) u-gcina unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

## **29 Gcina 'keep'**

i-adyumentu 1	=	intsimi (inanimate).
i-adyumentu 2	=	iinkomo (animals).
isiganeko	=	ubume (state).

Kwisivakalisi u-(27 b) u-gcina unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

## **30. Gcina 'mantain'**

i-adyumentu 1	=	imfuyo (animals).
i-adyumentu 2	=	usapho (human).
isiganeko	=	ubume (state).

### **4.2.8 Ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko ngamanzi (liquid)**

- 31 a Utywala bugcina umzimba udangele.  
"Liquor keeps the body weak."



- (b) Umqombothi ugcine amadoda imini yonke.  
Sorghum beer kept the men the whole day.  
"Sorghum beer delayed men the whole day."
- (c) Amanzi agcina umzimba usempilweni.  
Water keeps the body healthy.  
'Water maintains the body in good health.'

Qwalasela kwezi zivakalisi zingentla u-(31 a-c) indima zethetha zebinza lesibizo kunye nesifezekisi zesenzi u-gcina. Kwisivakalisi i-(31 a) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko butywala (inanimate), obuyi-adyumentu yomxholo (theme), kunye nesifezekisi sebinza lesenzi umzimba (human body) oyi-adyumentu yexhoba (patient). Kwisivakalisi u-(31 b) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko butywala (inanimate) obuyi-adyumentu yomxholo (theme), kunye nesifezekisi sebinza amadoda (human) oyi-adyumentu yexhoba(patient). Kwisivakalisi u-(31c ) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko ngamanzi (inanimate) oyi-adyumentu yomxholo (theme), kunye nesifezekisi sebinza lesenzi esililungu lomntu (animate) eliyi-adyumentu yexhoba (patient).

Lo mahluko undawonye wendima yethetha unxulumana nomahluko weyantlukwano yesuntsu legama u-gcina, kwaye ezi zivakalisi zibonisa iintlobo ezinomahluko zesuntsu legama ukuba zenza njani ukuze zichongelwe u-gcina ngokwendawo zesintaksi kunye nesemantiki. Qwalasela ezi yantlukwano zesuntsu legama zilandelayo zichongelwe u-gcina.

### **32. Umzekelo:**

- (i) Gcina 'keep'
- (ii) Gcina 'delay'
- (iii) Gcina 'maintain'

Olu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo lunganikezelwa ku-gcina ngenxa yeentsingiselo zakhe ezininzi kunye neyantlukwano yesuntsu legama ekuzekeliswe ngalo kwisivakalisi u-31 -c)

Kwisivakalisi u-(31b ) u-gcina unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

**33. Gcina 'keep'**

i-adyumententi 1	=	utywala (inanimate).
i-adyumententi 2	=	ilungu lomzimba (human body).
Isiganeko	=	ubume (state).

Kwisivakalisi u-(31 b) u-gcina unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

**34 Gcina 'delay'**

i-adyumententi 1	=	utywala (inanimate).
i-adyumententi 2	=	Abantu (human).
isiganeko	=	ubume (state).

Kwisivakalisi u-(31 c) u-gcina unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

**35 Gcina 'maintain'**

i-adyumententi 1	=	amanzi (inanimate).
i-adyumententi 2	=	ilungu lomntu(human body).
isiganeko	=	ubume (state).

**4.2.9 Ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko zezemidlalo (sport and game) (act and activity)**

Kwezi zivakalisi zilandelayo zino-gcina ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko linophawu lwesemantiki ezemidlalo (sport and game) (act and activity). Qwalasela ezi zivakalisi zilandelayo:

- 36    a    Upuca Ugcina abantwana bethe, qwa.  
               It keeps the children focussed.  
               "It makes the children focussed."
- b    Uthinti ugcina amakhwenkwe onwabile.  
               The game of throwing sticks keep the boys happy.  
               "The game of throwing sticks delay the boys."



- c Isoka ligcina abadlali bomelele.  
 "Soccer keeps the players physically fit."

Qwalasela kwezi zivakalisi zingentla u-(36 a-c) indima zethetha zebinza lesibizo esiyintloko kunye nesifezekisi zesenzi u-gcina. Kwisivakalisi u-(36 a) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko kunye nesifezekisi sebinza lesenzi zesenzi u-gcina. Kwisivakalisi u-(36a) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko ngu-puca (inanimate) oyi-adyumenti yomxholo (theme), isifezekisi sebinza lesenzi nga-bantwana (human) abayi-adyumenti yomamkeli (beneficiary). Kwisivakalisi u-(36 b) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko ngu-thinti (inanimate) oyi-adyumenti yomxholo (theme), isifezekisi ngamakhwenkwe (human) oyi-adyumenti yomamkeli (beneficiary). Kwisivakalisi u-(36 c) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko yisoka (inanimate) oyi-adyumenti yomxholo (theme), isifezekisi sebinza lesenzi ngabadlali (human) abayi-adyumenti yomamkeli (beneficiary).

Lo mahluko undawonye wendima yethetha unxulumana nomahluko weyantlukwano yesuntsu legama u-gcina, kwaye ezi zivakalisi zibonisa iintlobo ezinomahluko zesuntsu legama ukuba zenza njani ukuze zichongelwe u-gcina ngendawo zesintaksi kunye nesemantiki. Qwalasela ezi yantlukwano zesuntsu legama zilandelayo:

### 37 Umzekelo:

- (i) Gcina 'make' focus. Kwisivakalisi u (36 a)
- (ii) Gcina 'delay.' Kwisivakalisi u (36 b)
- (iii) Gcina 'keep.' Kwisivakalisi u (36 c)

Olu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo lunganikezelwa ku-gcina ngenxa yeentsingiselo zakhe ezininzi kunye neyantlukwano yesuntsu legama ekuzekeliswe ngalo kwisivakalisi u-(36 a-c).

Kwisivakalisi u-(36 a) u-gcina unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

### 38 Gcina 'make focus'

i-adyumenti 1 = Upuca (inanimate game).

i-adyument 2	=	abantwana (human).
Isiganeko	=	ubume (state).

Kwisivakalisi u-(36 b) u-gcina unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

### **39 Gcina 'delay'**

i-adyument 1	=	uthinti (inanimate game).
i-adyument 2	=	abadlali (human).
isiganeko	=	ubume (state).

Kwisivakalisi (u-(36 c) ugcina unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lwelsikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

### **40 Gcina 'keep'**

i-adyument 1	=	Isoka (inanimate game).
i-adyument 2	=	abadlali (human).
isiganeko	=	ubume (state).

#### **4.2.10 Ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko sisibizo sehlelo-15 (noun class 15)**

Kwezi zivakalisi zilandelayo zino-gcina ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko linophawu lwesemantiki, isibizo sehlelo 15 (noun class 15). Qwalasela ezi zivakalisi zilandelayo:

- 41     a     Ukufunda kugcina abantwana behlakaniphile.  
               "Learning keep children wise."  
            b     Ukusebenza kugcina imali.  
               Working keeps money.

"To work is to save money" (meaning that if you have money and you decide to leave the work, that does not mean you have money, because you will spend it and not knowing where to get it again, but if you have it and keep on working it will mean you save the money).



Qwalasela kwezi zivakalisi zingentla u-(41 a-b) indima zethetha zebinza lesibizo esiyintloko kunye nezifizekisi zesenzi u-gcina. Kwisivakalisi u-(41 a) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko lihlelo (15) ukufunda (inanimate) oyi-adyumenti yomxholo (theme) isifizekisi sebinza lesenzi ngabantwana (human) abayi-adyumenti yomamkeli (beneficiary). Kwisivakalisi u-(41 b) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko ngu-ukusebenza wehlelo (15) (inanimate) oyi-adyumenti yomxholo (theme), isifizekisi sebinza lesenzi yi-mali (inanimate) eyi-adyumenti yomxholo(theme).

Lo mahluko undawonye wendima yethetha unxulumana nomahluko weyantlukwano yesuntsu legama u-gcina, kwaye ezi zivakalisi zibonisa iintlobo ezinomahluko zesuntsu legama ukuba zenza njani ukuze zichongelwe u-gcina ngokwendawo zesintaksi kunye nesemantiki. Qwalasela ezi yantlukwano zesuntsu legama zilandelayo zichongelwe u-gcina.

#### **42 Umzekelo:**

- (i) Gcina 'keep.'
- (ii) Gcina 'save.'

Olu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo lunganikezelwa ku-gcina ngenxa yeentsingiselo zakhe ezininzi kunye neyantlukwano yesuntsu legama. Qwalasela ezi zivakalisi zilandelayo ekuzekeliswe ngalo kwisivakalisi u-(41a-b).

Kwisivakalisi u-(41 a) u-gcina unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali lulandelayo:

#### **43 Gcina 'keep'**

i-adyumenti 1	=	ukufunda (inanimate) class 15.
i-adyumenti 2	=	abantwana (human).
Isiganeko	=	ubume (state).

Kwisivakalisi u-(41 b) u-gcina unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

**44 Gcina 'save'**

i-adyumenthi 1	=	ukusebenza (inanimate) class 15.
i-adyumenthi 2	=	imali (inanimate).
isiganeko	=	ubume (state).

**4.2.11 Ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko lulwimi lwengingqi nenkcubeko**

Kwezi zivakalisi zilandelayo zino-gcina ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko linophawu lwesemantiki ulwimi lwengingqi nenkcubeko (society language and culture).

Qwalasela ezi zivakalisi zilandelayo:

- 45    a    Ingqithi igcina umnombo weso siduko.  
               Ngqithi keeps the lineage of such family.  
               "Ngqithi maintains the lineage of such family."
- b    Intonjane igcine imithetho yobuntanjane.  
               "Ntonjane keeps the rules of being ubuntanjane."
- c    USosuthu ugcine umthetho kayise.  
               Sosuthu is maintaining the laws of his father."

Qwalasela kwezi zivakalisi zingentla u-(45 a-c) indima zethetha zebinza lesibizo esiyintloko kunye nesifezekisi zesenzi u-gcina. Kwisivakalisi u-(45a) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko yi-ngqithi (animate) eyi-adyumenthi yomxholo (theme), isifezekisi sebinza lesenzi ngu-mnombo oyi-adyumenthi yomxholo. Kwisivakalisi u-(45 b) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko yi-ntonjane (human) eyi-adyumenthi yomenzeli (agent), isifezekisi sebinza lesenzi ngu-mthetho oyi-adyumenthi yomxholo (theme). Kwisivakalisi u-(45c) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko ngu-Sosuthu (human) oyi-adyumenthi yomenzeli (agent), isifezekisi sebinza lesenzi ngu-mthetho oyi-adyumenthi yomxholo (theme).

Lo mahluko undawonye wendima yethetha unxulumana nomahluko weyantlukwano yesuntsu legama u-gcina, kwaye ezi zivakalisi zibonisa iintlobo ezinomahluko zesuntsu legama ukuba zenza njani ukuze zichongelwe u-gcina ngokwendawo zesintaksi kunye nesemantiki. Qwalasela ezi yantlukwano zesuntsu legama zilandelayo zichongelwe u-gcina.



**46 Umzekelo:**

- (i) Gcina 'mantain' kwisivakalisi u- (45 a-c).
- (ii) Gcina 'keep' kwisivakalisi u-(45 b).

Olu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo lunganikezelwa ku-gcina ngenxa yeentsingiselo zakhe ezininzi kunye neyantlukwano yesuntsu legama ekuzekeliswe ngalo kwisivakalisi u-(45a-c).

Kwisivakalisi u-(45 a) u-gcina unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali lulandelayo:

**47 Gcina 'mantain'**

i-adyumenti 1	=	Inggithi (human).
i-adyumenti 2	=	umnombo (abstract).
isiganeko	=	ubume (state).

Kwisivakalisi u-(45 b) ugcina unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

**48 Gcina 'keep'**

i-adyumenti 1	=	intonjane (human).
i-adyumenti 2	=	imithetho (abstract).
isiganeko	=	ubume (state).

Kwisivakalisi u-(45 c) u-gcina unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

**49 Gcina 'mantain'**

i-adyumenti 1	=	USosuthu (human).
i-adyumenti 2	=	Umthetho (abstract).
isiganeko	=	ubume (state).

## UHLALUTYO LWELEKSIKHALI YESEMANTIKI YESENZI U-LONDOLOZA

### 4.3 UKHETHO NDAWONYE LWEBINZA LESIBIZO ESIYINTLOKO KUNYE NENJONGOSENZI KWISIVAKALISI ESINO-LONDOLOZA

Injongo yeli candelo kukuqwalasela ukhetho ndawonye lwebinza lesibizo esiyintloko kunye nenjongosenzi yesibizo kwizivakalisi ezino-londoloza kwakunye nokuqwalasela umahluko wamasuntswana egama u-londoloza ukuba enza njani ukuveza indibaniselwano nokuthi aqwalasele isemantiki yezifizekisi zamabinzana ezenzi zika- londoloza. Ukuphumeza le njongo, iindawo zolwakhiwo lwe-adyumenti kunye nolwakhiwo lwesiganeko sika-londoloza ziza kuhlalutya okanye ziza kuqwalaselwa ngokoluhlu lwesintaksi kunye nesemantiki yeendawo ekuthethwa kuzo.

#### 4.3.1 IBINZA LESIBIZO ESIYINTLOKO NGU-MNTU (HUMAN)

- 50 (a) Iqela labantu lilondoloza indalo.  
Group of people is looking after nature.  
"Group of people is protecting the nature."
- (b) Ulutsha lulondoloza imali ebhankini.  
Young people are keeping money in the bank.  
Young people are saving their money through banking.
- (c) Utata ulondoloza usapho lwakhe.  
Father is keeping his family.  
"Father is taking care of his family."

Qwalasela kwezi zivakalisi zingentla u-(50a-c) indima zethetha zebinza lesibizo kunye nesifizekisi zesenzi u-londoloza. Kwisivakalisi u-(50a) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko liqela labantu (human) eliyi-adyumenti yomenzeli (agent) eyi-adyumenti yomxholo(theme). Kwisivakalisi u-(50b) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko ngu-umntu (human) oyi-adyumenti yomenzeli (agent), kwaye isifizekisi sebinza lesenzi yi-mali (concrete mass noun) eyi-adyumenti yomxholo(theme) kwakunye ne-bhanki (locative). Kwisivakalisi u-(50c) ibinza lesibizo ngu-mntu (human) oyi-adyumenti yomenzeli (agent), kwaye isifizekisi sebinza lesenzi ngu-mntu (human) oyi-adyumenti yexhoba (patient).



Ezi zivakalisi zingentla zibonisa ukuba zenza njani ukuze zichongelwe u-londoloza ngokwendawo zesintaksi kunye nesemantiki. Qwalasela ezi yantlukwano zesuntsu legama zilandelayo zichongelwe u-londoloza.

### 51. Umzekelo:

- a (i) Londoloza "protect" kwisivakalisi u-(50a).
- b (ii) Londoloza "save" kwisivakalisi u-(50 b).
- c (iii) Londoloza "take-care kwisivakalisi u-(50c).

Olu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo lunganikezelwa ku-londoloza ngenxa yeentsingiselo zakhe ezininzi kunye neyantlukwano yesuntsu legama ekuzekeliswe ngalo kwisivakalisi u-(50a-c).

Kwisivakalisi u-(50a) u-londoloza unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

### 52 Londoloza "protect"

i-adyumenthi 1	=	NP umntu (human).
i-adyumenthi 2	=	NP indalo (abstract).
isiganeko	=	isenzo (activity).

Kwisivakalisi u-(50b) u-londoloza unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

### 53 Londoloza "save"

i-adyumenthi 1	=	NP umntu (human)
i-adyumenthi 2	=	NP into engaphathekiyo (concrete mass noun)
i-adyumenthi 3	=	indawo (NP loc)
isiganeko	=	isenzo (activity)

Kwisivakalisi u-(50c) u-londoloza unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

**54     Londoloza "take-care"**

i-adyumentu 1	=	NP umntu (human).
i-adyumentu 2	=	NP (human).
Isiganeko	=	isenzo (activity).

**4.3.2     IBINZA LESIBIZO ESIYINTLOKO SISILWANYANA (ANIMAL)**

Kwezi zivakalisi zilandelayo zino-londoloza ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko linophawu lwesemantiki sisilwanyana (animal).

55 (a) Imvubu ilondoloza amantshontsho ayo kwezinye izilo zamanzi.

Hippo keeps it's offspring from the other animals water.

"Hippo protects it's offspring against other animal water."

(b) Ingonyama ilondoloza abantwana bayo ngokuthi xa ihamba ihambe nabo.

Lion keeps it's offspring by going with them wherever it goes.

"Lion mantains it's offspring by going with them wherever it goes"

Qwalasela ezi zivakalisi zingentla u-(55 a-b) indima zethetha zebinza lesibizo senjongosenzi kunye nesifezekisi zesenzi u-londoloza. Kwisivakalisi u-(55 a) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko sisilwanyana (animal) esiya-adyumentu yomenzeli (agent), kwaye isifezekisi sebinza lesenzi ikwa sisilwanyana (animal) esiya-adyumentu yexhoba (patient). Kwisivakalisi u-(55 b) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko sisilwanyana (animal) esiya-adyumentu yomenzeli (agent), kwaye isifezekisi sebinza lesenzi ikwa sisilwanyana (animal) esiya-adyumentu yexhoba (patient).

Ezi zivakalisi zingentla zibonisa ukuba zenza njani ukuze zichongelwe u-londoloza ngokwendawo zesintaksi kunye nesemantiki. Qwalasela eziyantlukwano zesuntsu legama zilandelayo zichongelwe u-londoloza.

**56     Umzekelo:**

(i) Londoloza 'protect' kwisivakalisi u-(55 a).

(ii) Londoloza 'mantain' kwisivakalisi u-(55 b).



Olu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo lunganikezelwa ku-londoloza ngenxa yeentsingiselo zakhe ezininzi kunye neyantlukwano yesuntsu legama ekuzekeliswe ngalo kwisivakalisi u-(55 a-b).

Kwisivakalisi u-(55 a) u-londoloza unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

**57     Londoloza "protect"**

i-adyumenthi 1         =         NP isilwanyana (animal).

i-adyumenthi 2         =         NP isilwanyana (animal).

isiganeko                 =         isenzo (activity).

Kwisivakalisi u-(55 b) u-londoloza unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

**58     Londoloza 'maintain'**

i-adyumenthi 1         =         NP isilwanyana (animal).

i-adyumenthi 2         =         NP isilwanyana (animal).

i-adyumenthi 3         =         PP(nga).

isiganeko                 =         isenzo (activity).

**4.3.3     IBINZA LESIBIZO ESIYINTLOKO ZIZITYALO (PLANTS)**

Kwezi zivakalisi zilandelayo zino-londoza ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko linophawu lwesemantiki izityalo (plants).

**59 (a)** Umbona ulondoloza imali xa ulinyiwe.

Maize keeps money if it is harvested.

Maize saves money, when it is harvested (because you don't have to buy much grocery).

**(b)** Imithi ilondoloza umhlaba kukhuseleko.

Trees keep the soil from erosion.

Trees protect the soil from erosion.

La masuntsu abonakaliswe kwezi zivakalisi zingentla anganxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali lulandelayo, oluthi lubenayo ne-adyumentu efihlakeleyo. Kwaye ke le adyumentu efihlakeleyo yenziwa ziparamitha ezithi zibandakanywe ngokwentsingiselo kwigama leleksikhali. Zinokucaciswa kuphela ngokusebenzisa amahlelwana okanye amagama abalulwayo. Yona i-adyumentu emayenzeke yenzeka ziparamitha ezithile ezinenxaxheba kuqiso olungathethekiyo lwekhwaliya, kodwa zithi zicaciswe ngokobumbo lwesivakalisi.

Qwalasela kwezi zivakalisi zingentla u-(59 a-c) indima zethetha zebiza lesibizo kunye nesifezekisi zesenzi u-londoloza. Kwisivakalisi u-(59 a) ibiza lesibizo esiyintloko sisityalo (animate) esiyi-adyumentu yomxholo (theme), kwaye isifezekisi sebinza lesibizo yimali (into engaphathekiyo) abstract eyi-adyumentu yomxholo (theme). Kwisivakalisi u-(59b) ibiza lesibizo esiyintloko sisityalo (animate) esiyi-adyumentu yomxholo (theme), kwaye isifezekisi sebinza lesibizo ngu-mhlaba (concrete mass noun) oyi-adyumentu yomxholo (theme).

Ezi zivakalisi zingentla zibonisa ukuba zenza njani ukuze zichongelwe u-londoloza ngokwendawo zesintaxi kunye nesemantiki. Qwalasela ezi yantlukwano zesuntsu legama zilandelayo zichongelwe u-londoloza.

### Umzekelo:

- 60 (i) Londoloza 'save' kwisivakalisi u-(59 a).  
(ii) Londoloza 'protect' kwisivakalisi u-(59 b).

Olu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo lunganikezelwa ku-londoloza ngenxa yeentsingiselo zakhe ezininzi kunye neyantlukwano yesuntsu legama ekuzekeliswe ngalo kwisivakalisi u-(59 a-b). Lwesemantiki zizinto eziselwayo ezingenabuyobisi (liquid non-intoxicating).

- 61 a Amanzi alondoloza indalo.  
Water keeps the nature.  
Water maintains the nature (without water there is no life).  
b Ubisi lulondoloza impilo yabantu, ukuze ingabilula ukuhlaselwa zizifo.  
Milk keeps the health of people, so that it can not be affected by disease.  
Milk protects the people's health against any infectious disease.



Qwalasela ezi zivakalisi zingentla u-(61 a-b) indima zethetha zebinza lesibizo esiyintloko kunye nezifizekisi zesenzi u-londoloza, kwisivakali isi u- (61 a) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko ngamanzi (inanimate) ayi-adyumenti yomxholo (theme), kwaye isifizekisi sebinza lesenzi yindalo, engumenzelwa (beneficiary). Kwisivakalisi u-(61 b) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko lubisi (inanimate) oluyi-adyumenti yomxholo, kwaye sona isifizekisi sebinza lesenzi yimpilo (abstract) eyi-adyumentni yomxholo. Kananjalo esi sivakalisi siku-(61b) sithi songezwe sisihlanganiisi (co-ordinate clause ukuze).

Ezi zivakalisi zingentla zibonisa ukuba zenza njani ukuze zichongelwe u-londoloza ngokwendawo zesintaksi kunye nesemantiki. Qwalasela ezi yantlukwano zesuntsu legama zilandelayo zichongelwe u-londoloza.

## 62 Umzeke 10:

- (i) Londoloza 'maintain' kwisivakalisi u-(61a)
- (ii) Londoloza 'protect' kwisivakalisi u-(61 b)

Olu melo lweleksikhali yesemantik lunganikezelwa ku-londoloza ngezenzo zakhe eziminzi kunye neyantlukwano yesuntsu legama ekunikezelwe ngalo.

Kwisivakalisi u-(61 a) u-londoloza unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

### 63 Londoloza 'maintain'

i-adyumenti1	=	NP amanzi (animate).
i-adyumenti 2	=	NP ulondoloza (concrete mass noun).
isigomeko	=	Isenzo (activity).

Kwisivakalisi u-(61 b) ulondoloza unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

### 64 Londoloza 'protect'

i-adyumenti 1	=	NP ubisi (concrete mass noun).
i-adyumenti 2	=	NP umbilo (abstract).
i-adyumenti 3	=	Ukuze (co-ordinate clause).
isiganeko	=	Isenzo (activity).

#### 4.3.4 IBINZA LESIBIZO ESIYINTLOKO ZIZINTO ZENDALO NATURAL PHENOMENA)

Kwezi zivakalisi zilandelayo zino-londoloza ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko linophawu lwesemantiki izinto zendalo (natural phenomena).

**65 (a)** Intaba zilondoloza imfuyo.

Mountains keep the livestock.

Mountains protect the livestock, how? (In the sense that in the mountains there is humidity, green grass, pure water and there is warmth.)

**(b)** Umlambo ulondoloza amanzi.

River is keeping water.

River retain water.

Qwalasela kwezi zivakalisi zingentla u-(65 a-b) indima zethetha zebinza lesibizo kunye nezifizekisi zesenzi u-londoloza kwisivakalisi u-(65 a) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko zintaba (inanimate) eyi-adyumentu yomxholo (theme), kwaye isifizekisi sebinza lesenzi zizilwanyana (animals) eziyi-adyumentu yexhoba(patient). Kwisivakalisi u-(65 b) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko ngu-mlambo (inanimate) oyi-adyumentu yomxholo (theme), kwaye isifizekisi nga-manzi (mass noun) oyi-adyumentu yomxholo (theme).

Ezi zivakalisi zingentla zibonisa ukuba zenza njani ukuze zichongelwe u-londoloza ngokwendawo zesintaksi kunye nesemantiki. Qwalasela ezi yantlukwano zilandelayo zesuntsu negama zichongelwe u-londoloza.

#### Umzekelo:

**66 (i)** Londoloza 'protect' kwisivakalisi u- (65 a).

(ii) Londoloza 'retain' kwisivakalisi u- (65 b).

Olu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo lunganikezelwa ku-londoloza ngenxa yeentsingiselo zakhe ezininzi kunye neyantlukwano yesuntsu legama ekunikezelwe ngalo kwisivakalisi u (65 a-b).



Kwisivakalisi u-(65 a) ulondoloza unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

#### 67 Londoloza 'protect'

- i-adyumenthi 1 = NP intaba (inanimate).  
 i-adyumenthi 2 = NP imfuyo (animals).  
 isiganeko = isenzo (activity).

Kwisivakalisi u-(65 b) u-londoloza unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

#### 68 ondoloza 'retain'

- i-adyumenthi 1 = NP umlambo (inanimate).  
 i-adyumenthi 2 = NP amanzi (mass noun).  
 isiganeko = isenzo (activity).

### 4.3.5 IBINZA LESIBIZO ESIYINJONGOSENZI NGO-MNTU (HUMAN)

Kwezi zivakalisi zilandelayo zino-londoloza ibinza lesibizo esiyinjongosenzi linophawu lwesemantiki umntu (human).

69 Utata ulondoloza usapho lwakhe.

Father is keeping his family.

Father is taking-care of his family.

b Umama ulondoloza abafundi kwimigewu.

Mother is keeping the students in thugs.

Mother is protecting the students against thugs.

Qwalasela kwezi zivakalisi zingentla u-(69 a-b) indima zethetha zebinza lesibizo esiyinjongosenzi kunye nesifezekisi sebinza lesenzi zesenzi u-londoloza. Kwisivakalisi u-(69 a) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko ngu-mntu (human) oyi-adyumenthi yomenzeli (agent) kwaye isifezekisi sebinza lesenzi esiyinjongosenzi ngu-mntu (human) oyi-adyumenthi yexhoba (patient) kunye nombekwa-phambili u-(ku) wesibizo kwimigewu. Kwisivakalisi u-(69 b) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko ngu-mntu (human) oyi-adyumenthi yomenzeli (agent)

kwaye isifezekisi sebinza lesibizo esiyinjongosenzi ngu-mntu(human) oyi-adyumentu yexhoba (patient).

Ezi zivakalisi zingentla zibonisa ukuba zenza njani ukuze zichongelwe u-londoloza ngokwendawo zesintaksi kunye nesemantiki. Qwalasela eziyantlukwano zesuntsu legama zilandelayo zichongelwe u-londoloza.

### Umzekelo:

- 70** (i) Londoloza 'take-care' kwisivakalisi u- (69 a).  
(ii) Londoloza 'protect' kwisivakalisi u- (69 b).

Olu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo lunganikezelwa ku-londoloza ngenxa yeentsingiselo zakhe ezininzi kunye neyantlukwano yesuntsu legama ekuzekeliswe ngalo kwisivakalisi u-(69 a-b).Kwisivakalisi u-(69 a) u-londoloza unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

### **71 Londoloza 'take care'**

i-adyumentu 1	=	NP umntu (human).
i-adyumentu yenjongosenzi 2	=	NP umntu (human).
i-adyumentu 3 PP	=	(umbekwa-phambili).
isiganeko	=	Isenzo (activity).

### **4.3.6 IBINZA LESIBIZO ESIYINTLOKO SISILWANYANA (ANIMAL)**

Kwezi zivakalisi zilandelayo zino-londoloza ibinza lesibizo esiyinjongosenzi sinophawu lwesemantiki isilwanyana (animal).

- 72** (a) Umlimi ulondoloza umhlambi weenkomo zakhe.  
A farmer is keeping the herd of his cattle.  
A farmer is taking care of his herd.
- (b) Utata ulondoloza ikhazi lentombi yakhe.  
Father is keeping the lobola cattle of his daughter.  
Father is looking often the lobola cattle of his daughter.



Qwalasela ezi zivakalisi zingentla u-(72 a-b) indima zethetha zebinza lesibizo senjongosenzi kunye nezifizekisi zesenzi u-londoloza. Kwisivakalisi u-(72 a) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko ngu-mntu (human) oyi-adyumentu yomenzeli (agent) kwaye isifizekisi libinza lesibizo senjongosenzi isilwanyana (animal) esiyi-adyumentu yexhoba (patient). Kwisivakalisi u-(72 b) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko ngu-mntu (human) oyi-adyumentu yomenzeli (agent) kwaye isifizekisi sebinza lesenzi isilwanyana (animal) esiyi-adyumentu yexhoba (patient).

Ezi zivakalisi zingentla zibonisa ukuba zenza njani ukuze zichongelwe u-londoloza ngokwendawo zesintaksi kunye nesemantiki. Qwalasela ezi yantlukwano zesuntsu legama zilandelayo zichongelwe u-londoloza.

### Umzekelo:

- 73** (i) Londoloza 'take-care' kwisivakalisi u-(72 a).  
(ii) Londoloza 'look-after' kwisivakalisi u-(72 b).

Olu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo lunganikezelwa ku-londoloza ngenxa yeentsingiselo zakhe ezininzi kunye neyantlukwano yesuntsu legama ekuzekeliswe ngalo kwisivakalisi u-(72 a-b)

Kwisivakalisi u-(72 a) u-londoloza unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

### **74** Londoloza 'take-care'

i-adyumentu 1	=	NP umntu (human)
i-adyumentu yenjongosenzi 2	=	isilwanyana (animal)
isiganeko	=	isenzo (activity)

Kwisivakalisi u-(72 b) u-londoloza unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

### **75** Londoloza 'look-after'

i-adyumentu 1	=	NP umntu(human).
---------------	---	------------------

i-adyumentu yenjongosenzi 2 = isilwanyana (animal).  
 isiganeko = isenzo (activity).

#### 4.3.7 IBINZA LESIBIZO ESIYINJONGOSENZI ZIZINTO ZENDALO (NATURAL PHENOMENA)

Kwezi zivakalisi zilandelayo zino-londoloza ibinza lesibizo esiyinjongosenzi sinophawu lwesemantiki izinto zendalo (natural phenomena).

- 76** (a) Umfama ulondoloza umhlaba, ukuze uvelise.  
 A farmer is keeping the soil to produce.  
 A farmer is maintaining the soil, so that it can produce more.
- (b) Umlambo ulondoloza amanzi.  
 River is retaining water (for a long time).

Qwalasela ezi zivakalisi zingentla zebinza lesibizo senjongosenzi kunye nesifezekisi zesenzi, u-londoloza. Kwisivakalisi u-(76 a) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko ngu-mntu (human) oyi-adyumentu yomenzeli (agent) kwaye isifezekisi sebinza senjongosenzi ngu-mhlaba (inanimate), oyi-adyumentu yomxholo (theme). Kwisivakalisi u-(76 b) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko ngu-mlambo (inanimate) oyi-adyumentu yomxholo (theme) kwaye isifezekisi sebinza lesibizo senjongosenzi nga-manzi (inanimate) oyi-adyumentu yomxholo (theme).

Ezi zivakalisi zingentla zibonisa ukuba zenza njani ukuze zichongelwe u-londoloza ngokwendawo zesintaksi kunye nesemantiki. Qwalasela ezi yantlukwano zesuntsu legama zichongelwe u-londoloza.

#### Umzekelo:

- 77** (i) Londoloza 'maintain' kwisivakalisi u-(76 a).  
 (ii) Londoloza 'retain' kwisivakalisi u-(76 b).

Olu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo lunganikezelwa ku-londoloza ngenxa yeentsingiselo zakhe ezininzi kunye neyantlukwano yesuntsu legama ekuzekeliswe ngalo kwisivakalisi u-(76 a-b)

Kwisivakalisi u-(76 a) u-londoloza unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:



**78     Londoloza 'maintains'**

i-adyumenthi 1	=	NP umntu (human).
i-adyumenthi yenjongosenzi 2	=	NP umhlaba (concrete mass noun).
i-adyumenthi 3	=	igatya lesihlanganisi (sub-co-ordinate clause).
isiganeko	=	isenzo (activity).

Kwisivakalisi u-(72 b) u-londoloza unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

**79     Londoloza 'retain'**

i-adyumenthi 1	=	NP umlambo (inanimate).
i-adyumenthi 2	=	NP amanzi (concrete mass noun).
isiganeko	=	isenzo (activity).

**4.3.8 IBINZA LESIBIZO ESIYINJONGOSENZI ZIZINTO ZASENDLWINI (Household)**

Kwezi zivakalisi zilandelayo zino-londoloza ibinza lesibizo esiyinjongosenzi sinophawu lwesemantiki izinto zasendlwini (household).

- 80**     (a)     Umama ulondoloza imbiza ngokuzihlamba.  
                  Mother is keeping her pots by washing them.  
                  Mother is maintaining her pots from dirty by washing them.
- (b)     Utata ulondoloza ikhuba lakhe ngokulicoca.emva komsebenzi.  
                  Father keeps the plough by cleaning it after use.  
                  Father take-care of his plough by cleaning it after use.

Qwalasela kwezi zivakalisi zingentla u-(76 a-b) zino-londoloza indima zethetha zebinza lesibizo senjongosenzi kunye nesifezekisi zesenzi u-londoloza. Kwisivakalisi u-(76 a) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko ngu-mntu (human) oyi-adyumenthi yomenzeli (agent), kwaye isifezekisi sebinza lesibizo senjongosenzi zimbiza (inanimate) eliyi-adyumenthi yomxholo (theme), kwakunye no-nga ongumbekwa-phambili ka ngokuzihlamba. Kwisivakalisi u-(76 b) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko ngu-mntu (human) oyi-adyumenthi yomenzeli (agent) kwaye

isifezekisi sebinza lesibizo senjongosenzi likhuba (inanimate) eliyi-adyumenti yomxholo (theme), kwakunye no-nga ongumbekwa-phambili kangokulicoca.

Ezi zivakalisi zingentla zibonisa ukuba zenza njani ukuze zichongelwe u-londoloza ngokwendawo zesintaksi kunye nesemantiki. Qwalasela eziyantlukwano zesuntsu legama zilandelayo zichongelwe u-londoloza.

### Umzekelo:

- 81** (i) Londoloza 'maintain' kwisivakalisi u-(76 a).  
(ii) Londoloza 'take-care' kwisivakalisi u-(76 b).

Olu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo lunganikezelwa ku-londoloza ngenxa yeentsingiselo zakhe ezininzi kunye neyantlukwano yesuntsu legama ekuzekeliswe ngalo kwisivakalisi u-(76 a-b). Kwisivakalisi u-(76 a) u-londoloza unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

### **82** Londoloza 'maintain'

i-adyumenti 1	=	NP umntu (human).
i-adyumenti yenjongosenzi 2	=	NP imbiza (inanimate).
i-adyumenti 3	=	umbekwa-phambili u-nga (PP).
isiganeko	=	isenzo (activity).

Kwisivakalisi u-(76 b) u-londoloza unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

### **83** Londoloza 'take-care'

i-adyumenti 1	=	NP umntu (human).
i-adyumenti yenjongosenzi 2	=	ikhuba (inanimate).
i-adyumenti 3	=	umbekwa-phambili u-nga (PP).
isiganeko	=	isenzo (activity).



#### 4.3.9 IBINZA LESIBIZO ESIYINJONGOSENZI IZISELO EZINGENABUNGOZI (Liquids non-toxicating)

Kwezi zivakalisi zilandelayo zino-londoloza ibinza lesibizo esiyinjongosenzi sinophawu lweziselo ezingenabungozi (liquid non-toxicating).

- 84** (a) ULizo ulondoloza amanzi.  
 Lizo is keeping water.  
 Lizo is saving water.
- (b) Umama ulondoloza ubisi lungamoshwa.  
 Mother is maintaing milk not to be waisted.  
 Mother is keeping the milk not to be waisted.

Qwalasela ezi zivakalisi zingentla indima zethetha zebinza lesibizo senjongosenzi kunye nezifizekisi zesenzi u-londoloza. Kwisivakalisi u-(80 a) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko ngu-mntu (human) oyi-adyumenti yomenzeli (agent) kwaye isifizekisi sebinza lesibizo senjongosenzi nga-manzi (inanimate) oyi-adyumenti yomxholo(theme). Kwisivakalisi u-(80 b) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko ngu-mntu (human) oyi-adyumenti yomenzeli (agent) kwaye isifizekisi sebinza lesibizo senjongosenzi lubisi (inanimate) oluyi-adyumenti yomxholo (theme), kunye negatya lesilanduli (negative clause).

Ezi zivakalisi zingentla zibonisa ukuba zenza njani ukuze zichongelwe u-londoloza ngokwendawo zesintaksi kunye nesemantiki. Qwalasela eziyantlukwano zesuntsu legama zilandelayo zichongelwe u-londoloza.

#### Umzekelo:

- 85** (i) Londoloza 'save' kwisivakalisi u- (80 a).  
 (ii) Londoloza 'keep' kwisivakalisi u- (80 b).

Olu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo lunganikezelwa ku-londoloza ngenxa yeentsingiselo zakhe ezininzi kunye neyantlukwano yesuntsu legama ekuzekeliswe ngalo kwisivakalisi u- (80 a-b).

Kwisivakalisi u-(80 a) u-londoloza unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

#### 86 Londoloza 'save'

i-adyumenthi 1	=	NP umntu (human)
i-adyumenthi yenjongosenzi 2	=	NP amanzi (inanimate)
isiganeko	=	isenzo (activity)

Kwisivakalisi u-(80b) u-londoloza unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

#### 87 Londoloza 'keep'

i-adyumenthi 1	=	NP umntu (human).
i-adyumenthi yenjongosenzi 2	=	NP ubisi (concrete mass noun).
i-adyumenthi 3	=	igatya lolandulo u-lunga (negative clause).
isiganeko	=	isenzo (activity).

### 4.3.10 BINZA LESIBIZO ESIYINJONGOSENZI KUKUTYA (Food)

Kwezi zivakalisi zilandelayo zino-londoloza ibinza lesibizo esiyinjongosenzi sinophawu lwesemantiki ukutya (food)

- 88 (a) Umama ulondoloza umbona ungatyiwa zizilwanyana.  
 Mother is keeping the maize not to be eaten by animals.  
 Mother is protecting the maize not to be eaten by animals.
- (b) UMarry ulondoloza ibhatata, ukuze ikhule kakuhle.  
 Marry is keeping the sweet-potatoes, so that it can grow well.  
 Marry is taking-care of sweet-potatoes so that it can grow well (through irrigation methods).

Qwalasela kwezi zivakalisi zingentla u-(84 a-b) indima zethetha zebinza lesibizo esiyinjongosenzi kunye nezifizekisi zesenzi u-londoloza. Kwisivakalisi u-(84 a) ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko ngu-mntu (human) oyi-adyumenthi yomenzeli (agent), kwaye isifizekisi sebinza lesibizo senjongosenzi ngu-mbona umxholo (theme). Kwisivakalisi u-(84 b) ibinza



lesibizo esiyintloko ngu-mntu (human) oyi-adyumentu yomenzeli (agent) kwaye isifezekisi sebinza lesibizo senjongosenzi yi-bhatata engumxholo (theme).

Ezi zivakalisi zingentla zibonisa ukuba zenza njani ukuze zichongelwe u-londoloza ngokwendawo zesintaksi kunye nesemantiki. Qwalasela ezi yantlukwano zesuntsu legama zilandelayo zichongelwe u-londoloza.

#### Umzekelo:

- 89** (i) Londoloza 'protect' kwisivakalisi u-(84a).  
(ii) Londoloza 'save ' kwisivakalisi u-(84b).

Kwisivakalisi u-(53 a) u-londoloza unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

#### **90     ndoloza 'save'**

i-adyumentu 1	=	NP isityalo (animate).
i-adyumentu 2	=	NP imali (obstruct).
i-adyumentu 3	=	(xa) (shadow argument).
isiganeko	=	isenzo (activity).

Kwisivakalisi u-(53 b) u-londoloza unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

#### **91     Londoloza 'protect'**

i-adyumentu 1	=	NP umntu (animate).
i-adyumentu 2	=	NP umbona (concrete mass noun).
i-adyumentu 3	=	PP (ku) umbekwa phambili.
isiganeko	=	isenzo (activity).

### **4.3.10 INZA LESIBIZO ESIYINTLOKO ZIZINTO EZISELWAYO EZINGENABUYOBISI (LIQUID NON-INTOXICATING)**

Kwezi zivakalisi zilandelayo zino-londoloza ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko linophawu 'take care' kwisivakalisi u-(84b).

Olu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo lunzgnikezelwa ku-londoloza ngenxa yeentsingiselo zakhe ezininzi kunye neyantlukwano yesuntsu legama ekuzekeliswe ngalo kwisivakalisi u-(84a).

Kwisivakalisi u-(84a) u-londoloza unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lwelesikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

### **Londoloza 'protect'**

I-adyumenthi 1	=	np umntu (human).
I-adyumenthi yenjongosenzi 2	=	NP umbona (concrete mass noun).
I-adyumenthi 3	=	isenzo activity.

Kwisivakalisi u-(84b) u-londoloza unxulunyaniswa nolu melo lweleksikhali yesemantiki lulandelayo:

### **Londoloza 'take care'**

I-adyumeni 1	=	NP umntu (human).
I-adyumenthi yenjongosanzi 2	=	ibhatata (concrete mass noun).
I-adyumenthi 3	=	igatya lesihlanganisi (ukuze sub-coordinate clause).
Isiganeko	=	Isenzo (activity).



## ISAPHLUKO 5

Esi sahluko sinika okanye siveza eyona njongo yesi sifundo sisonke siquka onke la macandelo angaphambili ukususela kwisahluko sokuqala ukuza kuthi ga ngoku. Eyona njongo yesi sifundo kukuqwalasela ukhetho ndawonye lwamabinza ezibizo eziyi ntloko kunye nenjongo zezenzi zezibizo kwizivakalisi ezino-bamba, u-gcina kunye no-londoloza kunye nokuqwalasela umahluko wamasuntswana ezi zenzi zingentla, ukuba zenza njani ukuveza indibaniselwano, nokuthi siqwalasele isemantiki yezifizekisi zamabinza ezibizo ezi zezenzi sele zikhankanyiwe ngasentla ukuphumeza le njongo. Kwakhona nokuthi siqwalasele iindawo zolwakhiwo lwee-adyumenti kunye nolwakhiwo lweziganekozazo, apho zithi ziqwalaselwe ngokoluhlu lwesintaksi kunye nesemantiki ngokwendawo ekuthethwa kuzo.

Kwesi sifundo sisonke jikelele eyonanto isicacisayo ngakumbi ngamasuntswana egama, apho lo mahluko ucaca khona ngokupheleleyo, nakumelo lweleksikhali, ukutsho ulwakhiwo, sona isenzi sihlala simile asitshintshi kwaphela. Qwalasela le mizekelo ilandelayo ecatsulwe kwisahluko sesithathu inonjolwe okanye ephawulwe ngolu hlobo u-(6a-b)

1(a) Ikhazi libambe umtshato. (ungaqhubeki).

Lobola cattle held the marriage not to proceed.

Lobola cattle delayed the marriage.

(b) Igquba lezinja libambe umvundla.

Pack of dogs held the rabbit.

Pack of dogs caught the rabbit.

Kulapha kwezi zivakalisi zingentla apho uthi uvele, uphuhle ngokupheleleyo lo mahluko wamasuntswana egama. kwaye oko kuthi kulawulwe zizibizo ezizintloko kunye nezifizekisi zezenzi, kuba isenzi u-bamba akaguquki nakancinci, kodwa xa uphawula iintsingiselo zezivakalisi umahluko ukho kodwa zabelana ngesenzi esinye.

Ku-(1a) isuntsu legama ngu-delay, kwaye isifizekisi ngu-mtshato. Ku-(1b) isuntsu legama ngu-catch, isifizekisi sisibizo umvundla. Isizathu soko ingakumbi phaya ku-(1a) Ikhazi (ziinkomo ezithi zilibazise umtshato ngoba ngaphandle kwekhazi awukwazi ukuba ungatshata ngokwa-kwaNtu, yiyo lo nto likwaziyo ukuwulibazisa umtshato de libe



liyakhutshwa. Endaweni yekhazi njengokuba isisibizo esiyintloko ungasebenzisa isibizo (umntu) kuba yena uyakwazi ukucinga kwaye kukho izizathu ezithile ezinokumenza awubambe lo mtshato, ungenokwazi ukusebenzisa esinye isilwanyana ngaphandle kwenkomo, lo nto ayithethi kuthi iinkomo zifana nomntu ngengcinga kaloku zixhomekeke emntwini kwazona. Ungenakuthatha izinja, umzekelo uthi, zibambe umtshato kuba kaloku sisilwanyana asihoyanga mntu.

Kwakhona ku-(1b) awunakuthatha ikhazi uthi libambe umvundla, ngoba isisilwanyana zizilwanyana ezithile eziphila ngokuzondla ngenyama ezinokuthi zisetyenziswe njenge sibizo esiyintloko okanye umntu. Umzekelo, igquba labantu, elengwe, elamahlosi, hayi ikhazi leenkomo. Kwakhona phaya ku-(1a) kukho isilanduli asiniki ngxaki kuba nokuba asifakwanga yona intsingiselo imile.

Kwakhona phaya kwisahluko sesine lo mahluko ukho uthe wavela ngokuphathelele kwisuntsu legama, ugcina osisenzi esingatshintshiyo koko umahluko ukwizibizo ezi zintloko kunye nezifizekisi, zizo ezithi zinike lo mahluko wamasuntswana egama ngokucacileyo. Qwalasela le mizekelo ekwicandelo u-(4.6) enonjolwe ngolu hlobo (16a-b) kulapho le yantlukwano ikhoyo.

(2a) Ilanga lehlobo ligcina abantu ngezindlu.

Summer sun keeps people around their houses.

(b) Umbethe ugcina ingca inyelekile.

Dew keeps grass succulent.

Dew maintains the grass succulent.

Kulapha kanye lo mahluko uvelayo xa uqwalasela izivakalisi ezingentla, zahlukile ngokwamasuntsu entsingiselo u-2(a) isuntsu legama ngu-keep, kanti ku-(2b) ngu-maintain. Kufumaniseka ukuba noxa zisabelana ngesenzi u-gcina intsingiselo zazo zahlukile nezifizekisi kodwa amabinzana ezibizo azintloko ngawesibhaka-bhaka.

Kwisivakalisi u-(2a) akukwazeki ukutshintsha ela binza liyintloko (ilanga lehlobo) uthi umbethe noxa izi zibizo zesi bhaka-bhaka, endaweni yoko ungasebenzisa umoya, imvula, ingqele. Maxa wambi u-mntu kodwa kunzima kufuneka imibuzo ethile, ngabantu abatheni abo bagcine ngezindlu kuba benoloyiko. Kwakhona phaya kwisifizekisi ayinakuba sisilwanyana ngoba asihlali ndlwini.



Kwisivakalisi u-(2b) akwenzi ukuba ilanga lehlobo ligcine ingca inyelekile, ngoba liyatshisa. Izibizo ezinjalo ezinokuthi zisetyenziswe njenga mabinza azi ntloko, imvula, umntu inkungu zizo kuphela. Umntu yena ungena ngohlobo lokuba usenokuyinkcenceshela lo ndwawana akafani nokufumana okwenziwa yindalo. Kwaye phaya kwisifezekisi zine izifezekisi zesenzi ezivumelekileyo, ifumile, imanzi, inyelekile okanye inde.

Kwakhona, xa uqwalasela isenzi u-londoloza ubufana no-gcina kodwa ukho lo mahluko wamasuntswana kuba xa ezi zenzi uzisebenzisa kwizivakalisi ezahlukeneyo uyawubona umahluko, kodwa xa zibiza nje zingasetyenziswanga kubumbo lwezivakalisi awukho lo mahluko. Lo mahluko wamasuntswana uvezwa ubukhulu becala amabinzana azi ntloko kunye nezifezekisi zesenzi. Qwalasela ezi zivakalisi zilandelayo phaya kwicandelo u-4.16 ezinonjolwe ngolu hlobo u-(53a-b)

- 3 (a) Umbona ulondoloza imali (xa ulinyiwe).  
 Maize keeps money if it is harvested.  
 Maize saves money when it is harvested. (because you won't have to buy much more grocery).
- (b) Imithi ilondoloza umhlaba kukhukhuliseko.  
 Trees keep the soil from erosion.  
 Trees protect the soil from erosion.

Kwezi zivakalisi zingentla kusetyenziswe amabinza ezibizo azi ntloko azi zityalo. Ukuba uyaqwalasela ku-(53a) isuntswana legama ngu-(save) ku-(53b) ngu-protect kodwa zozibini ezi zivakalisi zabelana ngo-londoloza njenge senzi. Owona mahluko ukwizifezekisi. Phaya ku-(53a) akukwazeki ukusetyenziswa kwesilwanyana senziwe intloko, endaweni yoko kungasetyenziswa umntu kuzo zozibini ezi zivakalisi. Kwakhona phaya ku-(53a) esa sivakalisi asiphelelanga xa usithi, ubona ulondoloza imali. Umbuzo ngulo xa utheni? Umntu ulondoloza umhlaba, entwenini? Lo nto ibonisa ukuba awukwazi ukusebenzisa nasiphina isifezekisi kwizenzi ezithile, ku-(53a) kufanelekile isihlanganisi u-xa esetyenziswe ukuphuhlisa intsingiselo yesivakalisi, ukanti naphaya ku-(53b) isimaphambili sehlelo (15) kufanelekile sisetyenziswe.

Okokugqibela kwalapha kwisahluko sesithathu likho icandelo lamaqhalo kodwa ke lona alinawo lamasuntswana maninzi njenge zinye izahluko. Zona ubukhulu becala zixhomekeke kwibinza lesibizo esiyintloko esingu-mntu, kwaye nesifezekisi asitshintshi.

Umzekelo: Iona eli icandelo liphantsi ko-bamba kwaye liphawulwe ngokwamanani aseRoma (70vi)

4 (a) ULizo ubambe iliwa.

He hold the cliff.

He is waiting for something that will not happen.

Apha ke ibinza lesibizo esiyintloko lohlala lingu-mntu alitshintshi kwaye isifezekisi iyakuba liliwa aklinakubamba enye into.



Cowper, E.A. 1992. A concise introduction to syntactic theory: The **Government B approach**.

Du Plessis, J.A. 1999. **Lexical semantics and the African Languages**. Stellenbosch: University of Stellenbosch.

Jockendorff, R.S. 1973. **Semantic interpretations in generative grammar**. Cambridge: MIT Press.

Kearns, K. 2000. **Semantics**. New Zealand: University of Canterbury.

Levin, B. 1993. **English verb classes and alternation**. Chicago: University of Chicago Press.

Pustejovsky, J. 1991b. **The syntax of event structure**. *Cognition*. 41:47-81.

Pustejovsky, J. 1996. **The generative lexicon**. Cambridge: MIT Press.

Rappaport, M., Levin, B. and Laughren, M. 1993. Levels of lexical representation. In: Pustejovsky, J. (ed). **Semantic and the lexicon**. Dordrecht: Luwer Academic Publishers.

Ravin, Y. and Leacock, C. 2000. **Polysemy. Theoretical and computational approaches**. Oxford University Press.

Saint-Dizier, P and Viegas, E. 1995. **Computational lexical semantics**. London: Cambridge University Press.

Smith, C.S., 1997. **The parameter of aspect**. Second edition. London: University of Texas.

Spoofana, D.G. 1999. **The syntax of verbs involving the body in isiXhosa**. M.A. Thesis: University of Stellenbosch